



VIENNA SYMPHONIC LIBRARY

# Vienna Instruments

## Brass II

Mapping Documentation

**Piccolo Trumpet**

**Bass Trumpet**

**Triple Horn**

**Bass Trombone**

**Contrabass Trombone**

**Contrabass Tuba**

**Wagner Tuba**

**Cimbasso**

**Horn ensemble (8 players)**



## Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>Introduction</b> .....                   | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>Patch information</b> .....              | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>Matrix information</b> .....             | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>Preset information</b> .....             | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>Library updates</b> .....                | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>Articulations</b> .....                  | <b>10</b> |
| <b>Abbreviations</b> .....                  | <b>15</b> |
| Instruments .....                           | 15        |
| Articulations and other abbreviations ..... | 15        |
| <b>The orchestra</b> .....                  | <b>16</b> |
| <b>Pitch</b> .....                          | <b>16</b> |
| <b>51 Trumpet Piccolo</b> .....             | <b>17</b> |
| Description .....                           | 17        |
| Range and notation .....                    | 17        |
| Sound characteristics .....                 | 17        |
| Combination with other instruments .....    | 17        |
| <b>Patches</b> .....                        | <b>18</b> |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES .....                 | 18        |
| 02 DYNAMICS .....                           | 20        |
| 03 FLATTER + TRILLS .....                   | 22        |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL .....                      | 23        |
| 11 PERF INTERVAL FAST .....                 | 23        |
| 12 PERF TRILL .....                         | 24        |
| 13 PERF REPETITION .....                    | 24        |
| 14 FAST REPETITION .....                    | 25        |
| 15 UPBEAT REPETITION .....                  | 25        |
| A Single Upbeat .....                       | 25        |
| B Double Upbeats .....                      | 25        |
| C Triple Upbeats .....                      | 25        |
| 16 GRACE NOTES .....                        | 26        |
| 17 SCALE RUNS .....                         | 26        |
| Legato major .....                          | 26        |
| 18 MORDENTS .....                           | 26        |
| 98 RESOURCES .....                          | 27        |
| 01 Perf Rep dyn .....                       | 27        |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer .....          | 28        |
| 99 RELEASE .....                            | 28        |
| <b>Matrices</b> .....                       | <b>29</b> |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 .....                      | 29        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced .....         | 29        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard .....         | 30        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions .....      | 32        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase .....     | 33        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel .....    | 34        |
| <b>Presets</b> .....                        | <b>35</b> |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>53 Bass trumpet</b> .....             | <b>36</b> |
| Description .....                        | 36        |
| Range and notation .....                 | 36        |
| Sound characteristics .....              | 36        |
| Combination with other instruments ..... | 36        |
| <b>Patches</b> .....                     | <b>37</b> |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES .....              | 37        |
| 02 DYNAMICS .....                        | 39        |
| 03 FLATTER + TRILLS .....                | 41        |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL .....                   | 42        |
| 11 PERF INTERVAL FAST .....              | 43        |
| 12 PERF REPETITION .....                 | 43        |
| 13 FAST REPETITION .....                 | 44        |
| 14 UPBEAT REPETITION .....               | 45        |
| A Single Upbeat .....                    | 45        |
| B Double Upbeats .....                   | 45        |
| C Triple Upbeats .....                   | 45        |
| 15 GRACE NOTES .....                     | 45        |
| 16 FX .....                              | 46        |
| 98 RESOURCES .....                       | 46        |
| 01 Perf Rep dyn .....                    | 46        |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer .....       | 47        |
| 03 Perf Speed variation .....            | 47        |
| 99 RELEASE .....                         | 47        |
| <b>Matrices</b> .....                    | <b>48</b> |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 .....                   | 48        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced .....      | 48        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard .....      | 49        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions .....   | 50        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase .....  | 51        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel ..... | 52        |
| <b>Presets</b> .....                     | <b>53</b> |
| <b>55 Horn-Triple</b> .....              | <b>54</b> |
| <b>Patches</b> .....                     | <b>54</b> |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES .....              | 54        |
| 02 DYNAMICS .....                        | 55        |
| 03 FLATTER .....                         | 57        |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL .....                   | 57        |
| 11 PERF INTERVAL FAST .....              | 57        |
| 12 PERF TRILL .....                      | 58        |
| 13 PERF REPETITION .....                 | 58        |
| 14 FAST REPETITION .....                 | 59        |
| 15 UPBEAT REPETITION .....               | 59        |
| A Single Upbeat .....                    | 59        |
| B Double Upbeats .....                   | 59        |
| C Triple Upbeats .....                   | 59        |
| 16 GLISSANDI .....                       | 60        |
| 98 RESOURCES .....                       | 61        |
| 01 Perf Rep dyn .....                    | 61        |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer .....       | 61        |
| 99 RELEASE .....                         | 62        |
| <b>Matrices</b> .....                    | <b>63</b> |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 .....                   | 63        |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced . . . . .      | 63        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard . . . . .      | 64        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions . . . . .   | 65        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel . . . . . | 66        |
| <b>Presets . . . . .</b>                     | <b>68</b> |
| <b>57 Bass trombone . . . . .</b>            | <b>69</b> |
| Description . . . . .                        | 69        |
| Range and notation. . . . .                  | 69        |
| Sound characteristics . . . . .              | 69        |
| Combination with other instruments . . . . . | 69        |
| <b>Patches . . . . .</b>                     | <b>70</b> |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES . . . . .              | 70        |
| 02 DYNAMICS . . . . .                        | 71        |
| 03 FLATTER. . . . .                          | 72        |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL . . . . .                   | 73        |
| 11 PERF INTERVAL FAST. . . . .               | 73        |
| 11 PERF REPETITION . . . . .                 | 73        |
| 12 FAST REPETITION . . . . .                 | 74        |
| 13 UPBEAT REPETITION . . . . .               | 75        |
| A Single Upbeat . . . . .                    | 75        |
| B Double Upbeats . . . . .                   | 75        |
| C Triple Upbeats . . . . .                   | 75        |
| 14 GRACE NOTES . . . . .                     | 75        |
| 98 RESOURCES . . . . .                       | 75        |
| 01 Perf Rep dyn . . . . .                    | 76        |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer . . . . .       | 76        |
| 03 Perf Speed variation . . . . .            | 77        |
| 99 RELEASE . . . . .                         | 77        |
| <b>Matrices . . . . .</b>                    | <b>78</b> |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 . . . . .                   | 78        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced . . . . .      | 78        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard . . . . .      | 79        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions . . . . .   | 80        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase . . . . .  | 81        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel . . . . . | 81        |
| <b>Presets . . . . .</b>                     | <b>82</b> |
| <b>58 Contrabass trombone . . . . .</b>      | <b>83</b> |
| Description . . . . .                        | 83        |
| Range and notation. . . . .                  | 83        |
| Sound characteristics . . . . .              | 83        |
| Combination with other instruments . . . . . | 83        |
| <b>Patches . . . . .</b>                     | <b>84</b> |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES . . . . .              | 84        |
| 02 DYNAMICS . . . . .                        | 84        |
| 03 FLATTER + FX . . . . .                    | 86        |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL . . . . .                   | 87        |
| 11 PERF REPETITION. . . . .                  | 87        |
| 12 UPBEAT REPETITION . . . . .               | 88        |
| A Single Upbeat . . . . .                    | 88        |
| B Double Upbeats . . . . .                   | 88        |
| C Triple Upbeats . . . . .                   | 88        |
| 13 GLISSANDI. . . . .                        | 88        |
| 98 RESOURCES . . . . .                       | 89        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 01 Perf Rep dyn . . . . .                    | 89         |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer . . . . .       | 89         |
| 99 RELEASE . . . . .                         | 90         |
| <b>Matrices . . . . .</b>                    | <b>91</b>  |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 . . . . .                   | 91         |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced . . . . .      | 91         |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard . . . . .      | 92         |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions . . . . .   | 93         |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel . . . . . | 94         |
| <b>Presets . . . . .</b>                     | <b>94</b>  |
| <b>60 Contrabass tuba . . . . .</b>          | <b>95</b>  |
| Description . . . . .                        | 95         |
| Range and notation . . . . .                 | 95         |
| Sound characteristics . . . . .              | 95         |
| Combination with other instruments . . . . . | 95         |
| <b>Patches . . . . .</b>                     | <b>96</b>  |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES . . . . .              | 96         |
| 02 DYNAMICS . . . . .                        | 97         |
| 03 FLATTER + TRILLS . . . . .                | 98         |
| 04 MUTE BASIC . . . . .                      | 99         |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL . . . . .                   | 100        |
| 11 PERF INTERVAL FAST . . . . .              | 100        |
| 12 PERF TRILL . . . . .                      | 100        |
| 13 PERF REPETITION . . . . .                 | 101        |
| 14 UPBEAT REPETITION . . . . .               | 101        |
| A Single Upbeat . . . . .                    | 101        |
| B Double Upbeats . . . . .                   | 101        |
| C Triple Upbeats . . . . .                   | 102        |
| 15 GRACE NOTES . . . . .                     | 102        |
| 98 RESOURCES . . . . .                       | 102        |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer . . . . .       | 102        |
| 99 RELEASE . . . . .                         | 103        |
| <b>Matrices . . . . .</b>                    | <b>103</b> |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 . . . . .                   | 103        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced . . . . .      | 103        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard . . . . .      | 104        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions . . . . .   | 105        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase . . . . .  | 106        |
| <b>Presets . . . . .</b>                     | <b>107</b> |
| <b>61 Wagner tuba . . . . .</b>              | <b>108</b> |
| Description . . . . .                        | 108        |
| Range and notation . . . . .                 | 108        |
| Sound characteristics . . . . .              | 108        |
| Combination with other instruments . . . . . | 108        |
| <b>Patches . . . . .</b>                     | <b>109</b> |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES . . . . .              | 109        |
| 02 DYNAMICS . . . . .                        | 110        |
| 03 FLATTER . . . . .                         | 111        |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL . . . . .                   | 111        |
| 11 PERF INTERVAL FAST . . . . .              | 112        |
| 12 PERF TRILL . . . . .                      | 112        |
| 13 PERF REPETITION . . . . .                 | 112        |
| 14 UPBEAT REPETITION . . . . .               | 113        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| A Single Upbeat . . . . .                    | 113        |
| B Double Upbeats . . . . .                   | 114        |
| C Triple Upbeats . . . . .                   | 114        |
| 98 RESOURCES . . . . .                       | 114        |
| 01 Perf Rep dyn . . . . .                    | 114        |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer . . . . .       | 115        |
| 99 RELEASE . . . . .                         | 115        |
| <b>Matrices . . . . .</b>                    | <b>116</b> |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 . . . . .                   | 116        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced . . . . .      | 116        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard . . . . .      | 117        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions . . . . .   | 118        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel . . . . . | 119        |
| <b>Presets . . . . .</b>                     | <b>120</b> |
| <b>62 Cimbasso . . . . .</b>                 | <b>121</b> |
| Description . . . . .                        | 121        |
| Range and notation . . . . .                 | 121        |
| Sound characteristics . . . . .              | 121        |
| Combination with other instruments . . . . . | 121        |
| <b>Patches . . . . .</b>                     | <b>122</b> |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES . . . . .              | 122        |
| 02 DYNAMICS . . . . .                        | 123        |
| 03 FLATTER . . . . .                         | 124        |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL . . . . .                   | 124        |
| 11 PERF INTERVAL FAST . . . . .              | 125        |
| 12 PERF TRILL . . . . .                      | 125        |
| 13 PERF REPETITION . . . . .                 | 125        |
| 14 UPBEAT REPETITION . . . . .               | 126        |
| A Single Upbeat . . . . .                    | 126        |
| B Double Upbeats . . . . .                   | 126        |
| C Triple Upbeats . . . . .                   | 126        |
| 15 GRACE NOTES . . . . .                     | 127        |
| 98 RESOURCES . . . . .                       | 127        |
| 01 Perf Rep dyn . . . . .                    | 127        |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer . . . . .       | 127        |
| 99 RELEASE . . . . .                         | 128        |
| <b>Matrices . . . . .</b>                    | <b>129</b> |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 . . . . .                   | 129        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced . . . . .      | 129        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard . . . . .      | 130        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions . . . . .   | 131        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase . . . . .  | 132        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel . . . . . | 132        |
| <b>Presets . . . . .</b>                     | <b>133</b> |
| <b>65 Horns - a8 . . . . .</b>               | <b>134</b> |
| <b>Patches . . . . .</b>                     | <b>134</b> |
| 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES . . . . .              | 134        |
| 02 DYNAMICS . . . . .                        | 135        |
| 03 FLATTER + TRILLS . . . . .                | 135        |
| 10 PERF INTERVAL . . . . .                   | 136        |
| 11 PERF REPETITION . . . . .                 | 136        |
| 12 FAST REPETITION . . . . .                 | 137        |
| 13 UPBEAT REPETITION . . . . .               | 138        |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| A Single Upbeat . . . . .   | 138        |
| B Double Upbeats . . . . .  | 138        |
| C Triple Upbeats . . . . .  | 138        |
| 14 GLISSANDI . . . . .  | 138        |
| 98 RESOURCES . . . . .  | 139        |
| 01 Perf Rep dyn . . . . .   | 139        |
| 02 Long Notes - Single Layer . . . . .                                      | 140        |
| 99 RELEASE . . . . .  | 140        |
| <b>Matrices . . . . .</b>   | <b>141</b> |
| Matrix - LEVEL 1 . . . . .  | 141        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard . . . . .                                     | 141        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions . . . . .                                  | 142        |
| Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel . . . . .                                | 144        |
| <b>Presets . . . . .</b>  | <b>145</b> |
| <b>Appendix 1 – Scale Layouts and Ranges. . . . .</b>                       | <b>146</b> |
| <b>Scale runs - major . . . . .</b>   | <b>146</b> |
| <b>Piccolo Trumpet scale ranges . . . . .</b>                               | <b>147</b> |
| Octave runs . . . . .   | 147        |
| <b>Appendix 2 – Vienna Instruments PRO II Matrices and Presets. . . . .</b> | <b>148</b> |
| <b>Introduction. . . . .</b>  | <b>148</b> |
| Update Installation – DVD Collections . . . . .                             | 148        |
| General Information . . . . .   | 148        |
| <b>Single Instrument Matrices. . . . .</b>                                  | <b>149</b> |
| “MATRIX – VI PRO 2” . . . . .   | 149        |
| “01_basic” – The Allround Matrix . . . . .                                  | 150        |
| “02_leg-speed” (resp. “glissando-speed”) – Tweakable Intervals . . . . .    | 150        |
| “03_runs-leg_major” – Major runs on Speed. . . . .                          | 151        |
| “04_runs-leg_minor” – Minor runs on Speed. . . . .                          | 151        |
| “05_runs-special” – Special Scale runs on Speed . . . . .                   | 151        |
| “11 repetitions” – Repetitions without restrictions. . . . .                | 152        |
| “12 repetition-Dyn” – Dynamite Dynamics . . . . .                           | 153        |
| “21 runs+phr key” – Diatonic Runs & Phrases . . . . .                       | 154        |
| “22 runs+phr whl” – Whole-tone Runs & Phrases . . . . .                     | 154        |
| “23 runs+phr chr” – Chromatic Runs & Phrases . . . . .                      | 154        |
| “24 runs+phr key ext” . . . . .   | 155        |
| “25 runs+phr whl ext” . . . . .   | 155        |
| “26 runs+phr chr ext” . . . . .   | 155        |
| “31 perf-trills” – Thrilling Trills. . . . .                                | 156        |
| “32 arpeggios” – Fantastic Four String Arpeggios. . . . .                   | 157        |
| <b>Single Instrument Presets. . . . .</b>                                   | <b>158</b> |
| <b>Chord Matrices . . . . .</b>   | <b>160</b> |
| Woodwind MATRIX Files. . . . .  | 160        |
| Brass MATRIX Files. . . . .   | 160        |
| Chord Matrices . . . . .  | 162        |
| “01 Chords (8)”. . . . .  | 162        |
| “02 Chords (3)”. . . . .  | 162        |
| “03 Chords (5)”. . . . .  | 162        |
| “04 Chords (7+8)” . . . . .   | 163        |
| “05 Chords (8) Ext” . . . . .   | 163        |
| “06 Chords (3) Ext” . . . . .   | 163        |
| “07 Chords (5) Ext” . . . . .   | 163        |
| “08 Chords (7+8) Ext” . . . . .   | 163        |

|                                    | <b>Contents</b> |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| "11 Cho-rep (8)" . . . . .         | 164             |
| "12 Cho-rep (3)" . . . . .         | 164             |
| "13 Cho-rep (5)" . . . . .         | 164             |
| "14 Cho-rep (7+8)" . . . . .       | 164             |
| "15 Cho-repDyn (8)" . . . . .      | 165             |
| "16 Cho-repDyn (3)" . . . . .      | 165             |
| "17 Cho-repDyn (5)" . . . . .      | 165             |
| "18 Cho-repDyn (7+8)" . . . . .    | 165             |
| "21 Cho-Run key" . . . . .         | 166             |
| "22 Cho-Run whl" . . . . .         | 166             |
| "23 Cho-Run chr" . . . . .         | 166             |
| "24 Cho-Run key Ext" . . . . .     | 166             |
| "25 Cho-Run whl Ext" . . . . .     | 166             |
| "26 Cho-Run chr Ext" . . . . .     | 167             |
| "31 Cho-Phr key" . . . . .         | 167             |
| "32 Cho-Phr whl" . . . . .         | 167             |
| "33 Cho-Phr chr" . . . . .         | 167             |
| "34 Cho-Phr key Ext" . . . . .     | 167             |
| "35 Cho-Phr whl Ext" . . . . .     | 168             |
| "36 Cho-Phr chr Ext" . . . . .     | 168             |
| "41 Cho-trem" . . . . .            | 168             |
| <b>Chord Presets</b> . . . . .     | <b>169</b>      |
| Preset "Chords Std Set" . . . . .  | 169             |
| Preset "Chords Full Set" . . . . . | 170             |

## Introduction

This document contains the mapping list for the Brass II Collection of Vienna Instruments. You will find in it a comprehensive survey of the articulations/patches for the Standard and the Extended Libraries of each instrument, a listing of abbreviations, and the mapping list proper which gives details for every Patch, Matrix, and Preset in the collection.

## Patch information

The Patch information includes articulation type, playing range, number of samples used, RAM requirements, the number of velocity layers and alternations, AB switching possibilities, etc., as well as Patch specific information if necessary.

Where the type of articulation requires a special mapping (e.g., natural harmonics patches), the mapping layout will be shown in a detailed graphic.

**Major and minor runs** are always mapped to the keys of their scale, as are **arpeggios** to the keys of the broken chord played. **Grace notes** and **mordents** are mapped to their target note, i.e., the note the articulation ends with. Due to their nature, all **upward and downward articulations** (e.g., fixed glissandos and octave runs) have different mapping ranges – the upward movements ending the involved interval below the Patch’s upper mapping range, while downward movements end the interval above its lower mapping range. (Please note that not all of the articulations mentioned above may be contained in your Collection.)

## Matrix information

Each Matrix listing contains information regarding the Patches used for the Matrix, the number of horizontal and vertical dimensions, and switching properties. A mapping table shows the Cell positions for each of the Matrix’ Patches.

**A/B switching** normally is set to A0 for upward/crescendo, and B0 for downward/diminuendo. However, some bass instruments go below that range so that the A/B keys have to be adapted accordingly. For example, the A/B switches for double bass are A0 and A#0 because the instrument’s lower range extends to B0.

In order to facilitate working with **MIDI controller switches** like the Modulation wheel, the switching positions are not distributed equally across the controller range if they control more than two Matrix rows or columns; generally, the switching range will be narrower at the extreme positions because they are easy to set, and wider in the middle where it is harder to find the desired setting.

**Speed controller switches** naturally are adjusted to the Patches involved, and have been tested carefully as to their playability. However, if you find that they do not fit your playing, or want to try out other settings, you can change this as well as any other controller settings in the **Map Control** tab of the *Vienna Instruments* player’s Advanced View, and save the result in your Custom Matrix folder.

## Preset information

The Preset information lists the Matrices used in the Preset as well as its keyswitches. All other information can be gathered from the Matrix and Patch listings, so there’s not really much to say here. Please note that the Matrices of a Preset can also be switched with MIDI Program Changes (VI: 1–12; VI PRO: 1–127) instead of keyboard notes, and if you like to keep your keyboard free for playing instead of switching, you can disable Preset keyswitching and only use MIDI Program Changes. Vienna Instruments PRO also allows you to define a MIDI Control for Preset keyswitching.

## Library updates

If you purchased your Instrument Collection via download or on the *Vienna Hard Drive*, all previous library updates will already be included; if you own a DVD Collection, you can download the updates from your personal User Area. A general description of *Vienna Instruments PRO 2* Matrices and Presets included in these updates can be found in the Appendix “Vienna Instruments PRO 2 Matrices and Presets” on page 148.

|                      |
|----------------------|
| <b>Articulations</b> |
|----------------------|

| Instrument/group             | Level 1 (Standard) content  | Level 2 (Extended) content   |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>51 Trumpet Piccolo</b>    |   |  |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b> | Staccato<br>Portato short<br>Sustained with light and without vibrato       | Portato short with soft attack<br>Portato medium, normal, marcato, and with soft attack<br>Portato long, with light vibrato, marcato and soft attack; with strong vibrato, normal and soft attack; without vibrato, normal, marcato, and with soft attack<br>Sustained with strong and progressive vibrato |
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>           | Crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato, 5 and 9 sec.<br>Fortepiano, sforzato     | Crescendo and diminuendo with vibrato, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, and 5 sec.<br>Crescendo and diminuendo without vibrato, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 4, 8, and 12 sec.<br>Sforzatisimo  |
| <b>03 FLATTER + TRILLS</b>   | Flutter tonguing, normal and crescendo<br>Trills, minor and major 2nd, fast | Trills, minor and major 2nd, slow and accelerando  |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>      | Legato without vibrato, normal and sustain crossfading                      | Legato with vibrato, normal and with sustain crossfading<br>Marcato  |
| <b>11 PERF INTERVAL FAST</b> | Legato  | Marcato  |
| <b>12 PERF TRILL</b>         |   | Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd   |
| <b>13 PERF REPETITION</b>    | Legato slow<br>Portato<br>Staccato  | Legato fast<br>Dynamics, legato slow and fast, staccato  |
| <b>14 FAST REPETITION</b>    |   | Staccato, 9 repetitions, 140–180, and 200 BPM<br>Normal and dynamics   |
| <b>15 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>  |   | 1 and 3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM<br>2 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM   |
| <b>16 GRACE NOTES</b>        |   | Grace notes, minor and major 2nd, up and down  |
| <b>17 SCALE RUNS</b>         |   | Octave runs, legato<br>Major, C to B key, up and down  |
| <b>18 MORDENTS</b>           |   | Mordents, legato, up and down<br>6 variations each   |
| <b>53 Bass trumpet</b>       |   |  |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b> | Staccato<br>Portato short<br>Sustained with light and without vibrato       | Portato short with soft attack<br>Portato medium with and without vibrato, marcato, and with soft attack<br>Portato long, with normal (2 variations), progressive, and without vibrato, marcato and soft attack<br>Sustained with normal, progressive, and without vibrato                                 |

| Instrument/group             | Level 1 (Standard) content   | Level 2 (Extended) content  |
|------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>           | Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 4 and 6 sec.<br>Fortepiano, sforzato | Medium crescendo and diminuendo with vibrato, 1.5, 3, and 5 sec.; without vibrato, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, and 4 sec.<br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo with vibrato, 3, 4, and 6 sec.; without vibrato, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato, 6 sec.; without vibrato, 8 sec.<br>Sforzatisimo |
| <b>03 FLATTER + TRILLS</b>   | Flutter tonguing, normal and crescendo<br>Trills, minor and major 2nd      |   |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>      | Legato without vibrato   | Legato without vibrato, sustain crossfading<br>Legato with vibrato, normal and with sustain crossfading<br>Marcato  |
| <b>11 PERF INTERVAL FAST</b> | Legato   | Marcato   |
| <b>12 PERF REPETITION</b>    | Legato slow<br>Portato<br>Staccato fast                                    | Legato fast<br>Staccato slow<br>Legato dynamics<br>Portato, staccato slow and fast crescendo  |
| <b>13 FAST REPETITION</b>    |  | Staccato, 9 repetitions, 150 to 180, and 200 BPM<br>Normal and crescendo  |
| <b>14 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>  |  | 1–3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM  |
| <b>15 GRACE NOTES</b>        |  | Grace notes, minor and major 2nd, up and down   |
| <b>55 Horn-Triple</b>        |  |   |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b> | Staccato<br>Portato short<br>Sustained                                     | Portato medium  |
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>           | Crescendo-diminuendo, 2 and 4 sec.<br>Fortepiano, sforzato                 | Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, 2, 3, and 4 sec.<br>Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Crescendo-diminuendo, 3 and 8 sec.<br>Sforzatisimo  |
| <b>03 FLATTER</b>            | Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo                                      |   |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>      | Legato   | Marcato   |
| <b>11 PERF INTERVAL FAST</b> | Legato   | Marcato   |
| <b>12 PERF TRILL</b>         |  | Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd  |
| <b>13 PERF REPETITION</b>    | Legato<br>Portato<br>Staccato  | Dynamics for all repetitions  |
| <b>14 FAST REPETITION</b>    |  | Staccato, 9 repetitions, 140 to 180 BPM<br>Normal and dynamics  |
| <b>15 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>  |  | 1–3 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM  |
| <b>16 GLISSANDI</b>          |  | Performance glissandos, minor 3rd to octave<br>Fixed glissandos, 4th to octave, up and down<br>Slow octave glissando  |

| Instrument/group              | Level 1 (Standard) content                                      | Level 2 (Extended) content  |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>57 Bass trombone</b>       |   |   |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b>  | Staccato<br>Portato short<br>Sustained with and without vibrato | Portato medium, normal and soft attack, and marcato<br>Portato long, with and without vibrato, with soft attack, and marcato  |
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>            | Fortepiano, sforzato  | Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, and 2 sec.<br>Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, 2, 3, and 4 sec.<br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.<br>Sforzatissimo |
| <b>03 FLATTER</b>             | Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo                           |   |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>       | Legato  | Legato with sustain crossfading<br>Marcato  |
| <b>11 PERF INTERVAL FAST</b>  | Legato  |   |
| <b>11 PERF REPETITION</b>     | Portato<br>Staccato fast  | Staccato slow<br>Dynamics for all repetitions   |
| <b>12 FAST REPETITION</b>     |   | Staccato, 9 repetitions, 150 to 190 BPM<br>Normal and dynamics  |
| <b>13 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>   |   | 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM   |
| <b>14 GRACE NOTES</b>         |   | Grace notes, minor and major 2nd, up and down   |
| <b>58 Contrabass trombone</b> |   |   |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b>  | Staccato<br>Portato medium<br>Sustained                         | Portato medium, marcato<br>Portato long   |
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>            | Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.<br>Fortepiano, sforzato      | Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, and 2 sec.<br>Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3 and 4 sec.<br>Sforzatissimo   |
| <b>03 FLATTER + FX</b>        | Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo                           | Arpeggios, up/down and down/up<br>Duphonic playing, var. A and B  |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>       | Legato  | Legato with sustain crossfading<br>Marcato  |
| <b>11 PERF REPETITION</b>     | Portato slow<br>Staccato  | Portato fast<br>Dynamics, portato slow and fast   |
| <b>12 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>   |   | 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM   |
| <b>13 GLISSANDI</b>           |   | Performance glissandos, minor 2nd to major 3rd<br>Fixed glissandos, minor 2nd to 4th, up and down   |
| <b>60 Contrabass tuba</b>     |   |   |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b>  | Staccato<br>Portato medium<br>Sustained                         | Portato medium, soft and hard attack<br>Portato long, soft and hard attack  |
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>            | Fortepiano, sforzato  | Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 5 sec.<br>Sforzatissimo  |

| Instrument/group             | Level 1 (Standard) content                                 | Level 2 (Extended) content   |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>03 FLATTER + TRILLS</b>   | Flutter tonguing<br>Trills, minor and major 2nd            |  |
| <b>04 MUTE BASIC</b>         |  | Portato medium and long<br>Sustained<br>Crescendo and diminuendo, 3 and 4 sec.<br>Sforzato<br>Flutter tonguing, crescendo  |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>      | Legato   | Legato with sustain crossfading<br>Marcato   |
| <b>11 PERF INTERVAL FAST</b> | Legato   | Marcato  |
| <b>12 PERF TRILL</b>         |  | Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd   |
| <b>13 PERF REPETITION</b>    | Portato slow, staccato fast                                | Portato fast, staccato slow  |
| <b>14 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>  |  | 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM  |
| <b>15 GRACE NOTES</b>        |  | Grace notes, minor and major 2nd, up and down  |
| <b>61 Wagner tuba</b>        |  |  |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b> | Staccato<br>Portato short<br>Sustained                     | Portato medium and long  |
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>           | Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.<br>Fortepiano, sforzato | Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Sforzatissimo  |
| <b>03 FLATTER</b>            | Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo                      |  |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>      | Legato   | Marcato  |
| <b>11 PERF INTERVAL FAST</b> | Legato   | Marcato  |
| <b>12 PERF TRILL</b>         |  | Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd   |
| <b>13 PERF REPETITION</b>    | Legato slow<br>Portato<br>Staccato slow                    | Legato fast<br>Staccato fast<br>Dynamics for all repetitions   |
| <b>14 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>  |  | 1 upbeat, 80–140, 160, and 180 BPM<br>2 and 3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM   |
| <b>62 Cimbasso</b>           |  |  |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b> | Staccato<br>Portato medium<br>Sustained                    | Portato medium, marcato<br>Portato long, normal and marcato  |
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>           | Fortepiano, sforzato                                       | Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, and 2 sec.<br>Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.<br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.<br>Sforzatissimo |
| <b>03 FLATTER</b>            | Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo                      |  |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>      | Legato   | Legato with sustain crossfading<br>Marcato   |
| <b>11 PERF INTERVAL FAST</b> | Legato   | Marcato  |
| <b>12 PERF TRILL</b>         |  | Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd   |
| <b>13 PERF REPETITION</b>    | Portato<br>Staccato fast                                   | Staccato slow<br>Dynamics for all repetitions  |
| <b>14 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>  |  | 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM  |
| <b>15 GRACE NOTES</b>        |  | Grace notes, minor and major 2nd, up and down  |

| Instrument/group             | Level 1 (Standard) content  | Level 2 (Extended) content  |
|------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>65 Horns - a8</b>         |   |   |
| <b>01 SHORT + LONG NOTES</b> | Staccato<br>Portato short<br>Sustained                                | Portato medium<br>Sustained, blared   |
| <b>02 DYNAMICS</b>           | Crescendo-diminuendo, 6 sec.<br>Fortepiano, sforzato                  | Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3,<br>and 5 sec.<br>Sforzatissimo   |
| <b>03 FLATTER + TRILLS</b>   | Flutter tonguing, normal and crescendo<br>Trills, minor and major 2nd | Minor and major chords  |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>      | Legato  |   |
| <b>11 PERF REPETITION</b>    | Legato<br>Portato<br>Staccato   | Dynamics for all repetitions  |
| <b>12 FAST REPETITION</b>    |   | Staccato, 9 repetitions, 140 to 180 BPM<br>Normal and dynamics  |
| <b>13 UPBEAT REPETITION</b>  |   | 1–3 upbeats, 80–140, and 160 BPM  |
| <b>14 GLISSANDI</b>          |   | Performance glissandos, medium and<br>fast, minor 3rd to octave<br>Fixed glissandos, 4th to octave, up and<br>down<br>Slow octave glissando |

## Abbreviations

### Instruments

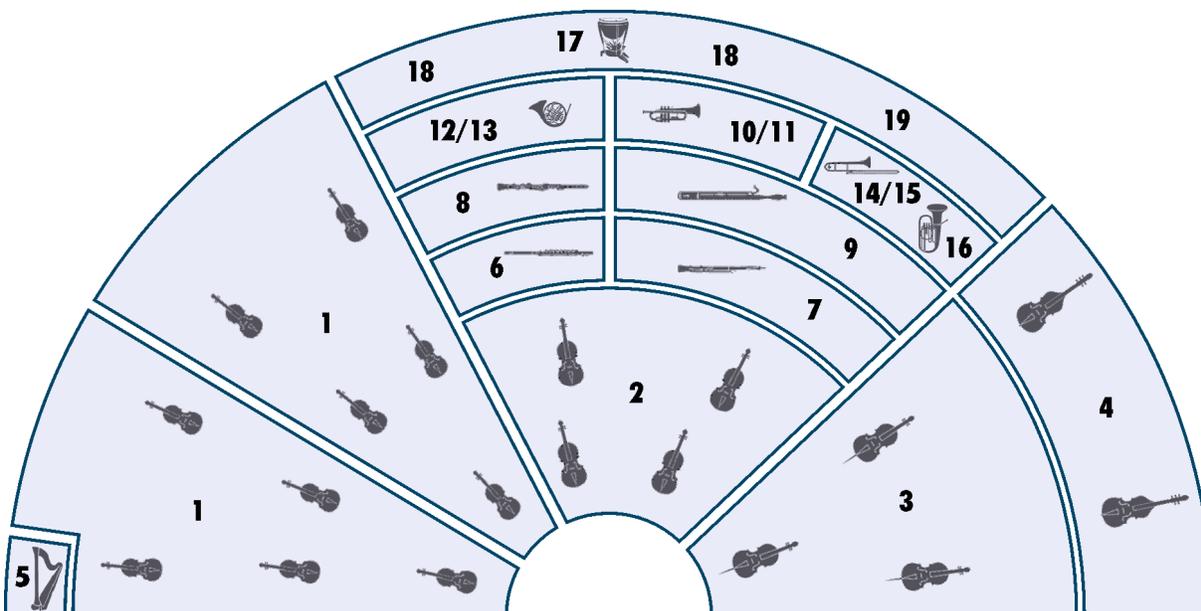
| Abbreviation | English                   | German            |
|--------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| BTB          | Bass trombone             | Bassposaune       |
| BTr          | Bass trumpet              | Basstrompete      |
| CI           | Cimbasso                  | Cimbasso          |
| CTB          | Contrabass trombone       | Kontrabassposaune |
| CTU          | Contrabass tuba           | Kontrabasstuba    |
| HO2          | Triple horn               | Tripelhorn        |
| HO-8         | Horn ensemble (8 players) |                   |
| PTr          | Piccolo trumpet           | Piccolotrompete   |
| WTU          | Wagner tuba               | Wagnertuba        |

### Articulations and other abbreviations

| Abbreviation  | Meaning                                  | Abbreviation | Meaning                  |
|---------------|--|--------------|--------------------------|
| +             | faster articulation (runs and arpeggios) | lo           | long                     |
| 150, 160, ... | 150, 160, ... BPM (beats per minute)     | ma           | major                    |
| 1s, 2s, ...   | tone length 1 sec., 2 sec., ...          | marc         | marcato                  |
| acc           | accelerando                              | me           | medium                   |
| all           | combination of all Patches of a category | mi           | minor                    |
| arp           | arpeggio                                 | mord         | mordent                  |
| blare         | “blared” tones (horn)                    | mu           | muted                    |
| cre           | crescendo                                | muA, muB     | muted, variation A/B     |
| dim           | diminuendo                               | nA           | normal attack            |
| dm            | diminished (arpeggios)                   | noVib        | without vibrato          |
| dyn           | dynamics (crescendo and diminuendo)      | perf-rep     | repetition performance   |
| dyn5, dyn9    | dynamics, 5/9 repetitions                | por          | portato                  |
| fa            | fast                                     | run          | octave run               |
| faT           | fast triplets                            | sA           | soft attack              |
| fA            | fast attack                              | sl           | slow                     |
| fA_auto       | attack automation (normal/fast attack)   | sta, stac    | staccato                 |
| fast-rep      | fast repetitions                         | sto          | stopped (horns)          |
| flutter       | flutter tonguing                         | str          | strong                   |
| fx            | effect sound                             | sus          | sustained                |
| gliss         | glissando                                | T            | triplets                 |
| hA            | hard attack                              | tune         | “tuning in” articulation |
| leg           | legato                                   | UB           | upbeat                   |
| li            | light                                    | UB-a1, -a2   | 1, 2 upbeats             |
|               |  | v1, v2 ...   | 1st, 2nd, ... variation  |
|               |  | Vib          | with (medium) vibrato    |
|               |  | Vib-progr    | progressive vibrato      |
|               |  | XF           | cell crossfade Matrix    |

## The orchestra

There are several ways of setting up an orchestra, depending on the era of the piece played, the type of the piece and the instruments it requires, and even on the preference of the conductor. The figure below shows one of the more common setups, which can be taken as a guideline for mixing a composition, properly positioning the instruments in the stereo field and adding reverb according to the size of the concert hall you want your piece to be played in.



- 1 1st and 2nd violin
- 2 Viola
- 3 Cello
- 4 Double bass
- 5 Harp
- 6 Concert flute, piccolo
- 7 Oboe, English horn
- 8 Clarinet, bass clarinet

- 9 Bassoon, contrabassoon
- 10/11 Trumpet
- 12/13 Horn
- 14/15 Trombone
- 16 Tuba
- 17 Timpani
- 18 Drums, cymbals
- 19 other percussion instruments

## Pitch

For designating pitch, the Vienna Symphonic Library uses International Pitch Notation (IPN), which was agreed upon internationally under the auspices of the Acoustical Society of America. In this system the international standard of A=440 Hz is called A4 and middle C is C4. All pitches are written as capital letters, their respective octave being indicated by a number next to it. The lowest C on the piano is C1 (the A below that is A0), etc.

You can tune your Vienna Instruments to other players, or adjust it to tunings of earlier musical periods by setting the Perform page's Master Tune option within a range of 420 to 460 Hz.

# 51 Trumpet Piccolo

## Description

The name piccolo trumpet is given to all trumpets pitched from D through high Bb. Today, the piccolo trumpet is used for orchestral playing mainly when the trumpet part is permanently in a very high register, e.g. for the performance of baroque clarino parts in Bach and Handel.

## Range and notation

The piccolo trumpet in high Bb has a range of D4–G6. It is notated in treble clef. It is a transposing instrument and sounds a minor seventh higher than written.

## Sound characteristics

The piccolo trumpet has a sound which exhibits all the typical characteristics of the trumpet, although it is brighter and clearer than the C trumpet. The instrument's easy response means that the full sound is achieved immediately after blowing. The sound develops best between C5 and C6.

## Combination with other instruments

The extreme clarity and brilliance of the piccolo trumpet makes it ideal as a solo instrument, but in 20th century orchestration piccolo trumpets of various pitches are often used to flesh out the sound, e.g. in unison with the oboes.

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: C4–F6



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato short

Sustained with light and without vibrato

**Level 2:** Portato short with soft attack

Portato medium, normal, marcato, and with soft attack

Portato long, with light vibrato, marcato and soft attack; with strong vibrato, normal and soft attack; without vibrato, normal, marcato, and with soft attack

Sustained with strong and progressive vibrato

#### 01 PTR\_staccato

Samples: 168

RAM: 10 MB

Level 1

Staccato

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 02 PTR\_portato\_short

Samples: 166

RAM: 10 MB

Level 1

Portato, short

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 03 PTR\_portato\_short\_soft

Samples: 166

RAM: 10 MB

Level 2

Portato, short, soft attack

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 04 PTR\_portato\_medium

Samples: 166

RAM: 10 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 05 PTR\_portato\_medium\_marc

Samples: 112

RAM: 7 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, marcato

2 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 06 PTR\_portato\_medium\_soft

Samples: 168

RAM: 10 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, soft attack

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 07 PTR\_portato\_long-marc\_Vib-light

Samples: 112

RAM: 7 MB

Level 2

Portato, long, marcato, with light vibrato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

|   |                     |                     |                   |                |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>08 PTr_portato_long-soft_Vib-light</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 168</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Portato, long, soft attack, with light vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations  |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>09 PTr_portato_long-norm_Vib-strong</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 168</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Portato, long, normal, with strong vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations      |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>10 PTr_portato_long-soft_Vib-strong</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 167</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Portato, long, soft attack, with strong vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 PTr_portato_long-norm_noVib</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 168</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Portato, long, normal, without vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations          |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>12 PTr_portato_long-marc_noVib</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 112</b> | <b>RAM: 7 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Portato, long, marcato, without vibrato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations         |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>13 PTr_portato_long-soft_noVib</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 168</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Portato, long, soft, without vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations            |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>21 PTr_sus_Vib-light</b>   | <b>Range: C4–E6</b> | <b>Samples: 155</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Sustained, with light vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples                                     |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>22 PTr_sus_Vib-strong</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 165</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, with strong vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples                                    |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>23 PTr_sus_Vib-progr</b>   | <b>Range: C4–E6</b> | <b>Samples: 156</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, progressive vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples                                    |                     |                     |                   |                |

**24 PTR\_sus\_noVib****Samples: 165 RAM: 10 MB Level 1**

Sustained, without vibrato  
 3 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**02 DYNAMICS****Range: C4–F6**

Dynamics

**Level 1:** Crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato, 5 and 9 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato

**Level 2:** Crescendo and diminuendo with vibrato, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, and 5 sec.

Crescendo and diminuendo without vibrato, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 4, 8, and 12 sec.

Sforzatisimo

**01 PTR\_dyn\_Vib\_1s****Samples: 54 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 1 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**02 PTR\_dyn\_Vib\_1'5s****Samples: 54 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 1.5 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**03 PTR\_dyn\_Vib\_2s****Range: C4–D#6 Samples: 50 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 2 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**04 PTR\_dyn\_Vib\_3s****Range: C4–D#6 Samples: 50 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 3 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**05 PTR\_dyn\_Vib\_5s****Range: C4–D#6 Samples: 50 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 5 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**11 PTR\_dyn\_noVib\_1s****Samples: 56 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 1 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**12 PTR\_dyn\_noVib\_1'5s****Samples: 56 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 1.5 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

|  |                     |                    |                  |                |
|--|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>13 PTr_dyn_noVib_2s</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 56</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 2 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>14 PTr_dyn_noVib_3s</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 56</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 3 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>15 PTr_dyn_noVib_4s</b>   | <b>Range: C4–E6</b> | <b>Samples: 52</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>16 PTr_dyn_noVib_6s</b>   | <b>Range: C4–E6</b> | <b>Samples: 52</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>21 PTr_pfp_Vib_5s</b>   | <b>Range: C4–D6</b> | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato, 5 sec.<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>22 PTr_pfp_Vib_9s</b>   | <b>Range: C4–D6</b> | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato, 9 sec.<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>23 PTr_pfp_noVib_4s</b>   | <b>Range: C4–D6</b> | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer   |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>24 PTr_pfp_noVib_8s</b>   | <b>Range: C4–E6</b> | <b>Samples: 25</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 8 sec.<br>1 velocity layer   |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>25 PTr_pfp_noVib_12s</b>  | <b>Range: C4–E6</b> | <b>Samples: 25</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 12 sec.<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>31 PTr_fp</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 28</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Fortepiano<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations   |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>32 PTr_szf</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 28</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Sforzato<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations   |                     |                    |                  |                |

**03 FLATTER + TRILLS****Range: C4–D6**

Flutter tonguing and trills

**Level 1:** Flutter tonguing, normal and crescendo

Trills, minor and major 2nd, fast

**Level 2:** Trills, minor and major 2nd, slow and accelerando**01 PTr\_flutter****Range: C4–A#5****Samples: 38****RAM: 2 MB****Level 1**

Flutter tonguing

1 velocity layer

Release samples

**02 PTr\_flutter\_cre****Range: C4–A#5****Samples: 20****RAM: 1 MB****Level 1**

Flutter tonguing, crescendo

1 velocity layer

**11 PTr\_trill-slow\_1****Samples: 94****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Trills, slow, minor 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**12 PTr\_trill-slow\_2****Samples: 92****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Trills, slow, major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**13 PTr\_trill-fast\_1****Samples: 92****RAM: 5 MB****Level 1**

Trills, fast, minor 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**14 PTr\_trill-fast\_2****Samples: 92****RAM: 5 MB****Level 1**

Trills, fast, major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**15 PTr\_trill-acc\_1****Samples: 92****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Trills accelerando, minor 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**16 PTr\_trill-acc\_2****Samples: 92****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Trills accelerando, major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**10 PERF INTERVAL****Range: C4–F6**

Interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato without vibrato, normal and sustain crossfading**Level 2:** Legato with vibrato, normal and with sustain crossfading

Marcato

**01 PTR\_perf-legato\_noVib****Samples: 617****RAM: 38 MB****Level 1**

Legato without vibrato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 PTR\_perf-legato\_noVib\_sus****Samples: 617****RAM: 38 MB****Level 1**

Legato without vibrato

Sustain crossfading

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**03 PTR\_perf-legato\_Vib****Samples: 613****RAM: 38 MB****Level 2**

Legato, with vibrato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**04 PTR\_perf-legato\_Vib\_sus****Samples: 613****RAM: 38 MB****Level 2**

Legato, with vibrato

Sustain crossfading

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**05 PTR\_perf-marcato****Range: C4–E6****Samples: 666****RAM: 41 MB****Level 2**

Marcato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**11 PERF INTERVAL FAST**

Fast interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato**Level 2:** Marcato**01 PTR\_perf-legato\_fa****Range: C4–F6****Samples: 723****RAM: 45 MB****Level 1**

Legato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 PTR\_perf-marcato\_fa****Range: C4–E6****Samples: 766****RAM: 47 MB****Level 2**

Marcato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**12 PERF TRILL****Range: C4–F6**

Multi interval performances

**Level 2:** Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd**01 PTr\_perf-trill****Samples: 1161 RAM: 72 MB Level 2**

Performance trills, legato, minor to major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**13 PERF REPETITION**

Repetition performances

**Level 1:** Legato slow

Portato

Staccato

**Level 2:** Legato fast

Dynamics, legato slow and fast, staccato

**01 PTr\_perf-rep\_leg-sl****Range: C4–F6 Samples: 150 RAM: 9 MB Level 1**

Repetition performances: Legato, slow

2 velocity layers

**02 PTr\_perf-rep\_leg-fa****Range: C4–F6 Samples: 180 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances: Legato, fast

2 velocity layers

**03 PTr\_perf-rep\_por****Range: C4–E6 Samples: 216 RAM: 13 MB Level 1**

Repetition performances: Portato

2 velocity layers

**04 PTr\_perf-rep\_sta****Range: C4–E6 Samples: 216 RAM: 13 MB Level 1**

Repetition performances: Staccato

2 velocity layers

**21 PTr\_perf-rep\_dyn6\_leg-sl****Range: C4–D6 Samples: 150 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances: Legato dynamics, slow, 6 repetitions

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**22 PTr\_perf-rep\_dyn6\_leg-fa****Range: C4–D6 Samples: 144 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances: Legato dynamics, fast, 6 repetitions

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**23 PTr\_perf-rep\_dyn9\_sta****Range: C4–E6 Samples: 216 RAM: 13 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, 9 repetitions

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**14 FAST REPETITION**

Range: D4–E6



Fast repetitions

**Level 2:** Staccato, 9 repetitions, 140–180, and 200 BPM

Normal and dynamics

**01 PTr\_fast-rep\_140 (150/160/170/180/200)**

Samples: 88

RAM: 5 MB

Level 2

Fast repetitions: 140–180, and 200 BPM

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**11 PTr\_fast-rep\_140\_dyn (150/160/170/180/200)**

Samples: 44

RAM: 2 MB

Level 2

Fast repetitions: Dynamics, 140–180, and 200 BPM

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**15 UPBEAT REPETITION**

Upbeat repetitions

**Level 2:** 1 and 3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

2 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**A Single Upbeat**

Range: D4–F6

**01 PTr\_UB-a1\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 50

RAM: 3 MB

Level 2

1 upbeat, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

2 velocity layers

**B Double Upbeats**

Range: D4–F6

**02 PTr\_UB-a2\_90 (100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 48

RAM: 3 MB

Level 2

2 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

2 velocity layers

**C Triple Upbeats**

Range: D4–F6

**01 PTr\_UB-a3\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 48

RAM: 3 MB

Level 2

3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

2 velocity layers

**16 GRACE NOTES**

Range: C4–F6

Phrases

**Level 2:** Grace notes

Minor and major 2nd

Up and down

Mapped to target note

**01 PTR\_grace-1**Samples: 166 RAM: 10 MB **Level 2**

Grace notes, minor 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

AB switch: up/down

**02 PTR\_grace-2**Samples: 162 RAM: 10 MB **Level 2**

Grace notes, major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

AB switch: up/down

**17 SCALE RUNS**

Phrases

**Level 2:** Octave runs, legato

Major, C to B key

Up and down

**Legato major****01 PTR\_run-leg\_C-ma (through to B-ma)**Samples: 16 RAM: 1 MB **Level 2**

Octave runs, legato, C to B major

1 velocity layer

AB switch: up/down

**18 MORDENTS**

Phrases

**Level 2:** Mordents, legato

Up and down

6 variations each

The samples are mapped to the target note

**01 PTR\_mord-leg\_v1**Range: C4–D6 Samples: 48 RAM: 3 MB **Level 2**

Mordents, legato

Single mordent, minor 2nd

2 velocity layers

AB switch: up/down

|  |                      |                    |                  |                |
|--|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 PTr_mord-leg_v2</b>  | <b>Range: C4–D#6</b> | <b>Samples: 48</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Mordents, legato<br>Single mordent, major 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: up/down |                      |                    |                  |                |
| <b>03 PTr_mord-leg_v3</b>  | <b>Range: C4–D#6</b> | <b>Samples: 48</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Mordents, legato<br>Minor 2nd - minor 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: up/down     |                      |                    |                  |                |
| <b>04 PTr_mord-leg_v4</b>  | <b>Range: C4–E6</b>  | <b>Samples: 48</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Mordents, legato<br>Minor 2nd - major 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: up/down     |                      |                    |                  |                |
| <b>05 PTr_mord-leg_v5</b>  | <b>Range: C4–E6</b>  | <b>Samples: 48</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Mordents, legato<br>Major 2nd - minor 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: up/down     |                      |                    |                  |                |
| <b>06 PTr_mord-leg_v6</b>  | <b>Range: C4–F6</b>  | <b>Samples: 48</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Mordents, legato<br>Major 2nd - major 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: up/down     |                      |                    |                  |                |

## 98 RESOURCES

Resources

**Level 2:** Isolated dynamics repetitions: Legato slow and fast, staccato

Single layer long notes

|  |                     |                    |                  |                |
|--|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 Perf Rep dyn</b>   | <b>Range: C4–D6</b> |                    |                  |                |
| <b>01 PTr_rep_cre6_leg-sl-1 (2/3/4/5/6)</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 13</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions<br>Legato, slow, crescendo, 1st to 6th note<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>01 PTr_rep_dim6_leg-sl-1 (2/3/4/5/6)</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 12</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions<br>Legato, slow, diminuendo, 1st to 6th note<br>1 velocity layer |                     |                    |                  |                |

|  |                     |                     |                  |
|--|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <b>02 PTr_rep_cre6_leg-fa-1 (2/3/4/5/6)</b>  | <b>Samples: 12</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b>    | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Extracted repetitions<br>Legato, fast, crescendo, 1st to 6th note<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                     |                  |
| <b>02 PTr_rep_dim6_leg-fa-1 (2/3/4/5/6)</b>  | <b>Samples: 12</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b>    | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Extracted repetitions<br>Legato, fast, diminuendo, 1st to 6th note<br>1 velocity layer |                     |                     |                  |
| <b>04 PTr_rep_cre9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>   | <b>Range: C4–E6</b> | <b>Samples: 12</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Staccato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer        |                     |                     |                  |
| <b>04 PTr_rep_dim9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>   | <b>Range: C4–E6</b> | <b>Samples: 12</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Staccato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer       |                     |                     |                  |
| <b>02 Long Notes - Single Layer</b>  |                     | <b>Range: C4–F6</b> |                  |
| <b>01 PTr_sus_p_noVib</b>  | <b>Samples: 56</b>  | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b>    | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Sustained, piano, without vibrato<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples               |                     |                     |                  |
| <b>02 PTr_sus_mf_noVib</b>   | <b>Samples: 56</b>  | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b>    | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Sustained, mezzoforte, without vibrato<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples          |                     |                     |                  |
| <b>03 PTr_sus_f_noVib</b>  | <b>Samples: 53</b>  | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b>    | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Sustained, forte, without vibrato<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples               |                     |                     |                  |

## 99 RELEASE

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

## Matrices

### Matrix - LEVEL 1

#### L1 PTr Articulation Combi

Samples: 914 RAM: 57 MB Level 1

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato short, sustained with light and without vibrato, crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato 5 and 9 sec., fortepiano and sforzato, flutter tonguing normal and crescendo, fast trills half and whole tone

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C1          | C#1            | D1           | D#1 | E1            | F1               |
|----|-------------|----------------|--------------|-----|---------------|------------------|
| V1 | stac        | sus light vib. | pfp vib. 5s. | fp  | flutter       | trill fast half  |
| V2 | port. short | sus no vib.    | pfp vib. 9s. | sfz | flutter cres. | trill fast whole |

#### L1 PTr Perf-Legato Speed

Samples: 827 RAM: 51 MB Level 1

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading, normal without vibrato, and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1     | H2             | H3   |
|--------|--------|----------------|------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal no vib. | fast |

#### L1 PTr Perf-Repetitions Combi

Samples: 582 RAM: 36 MB Level 1

Repetition performances

Legato slow

Portato

Staccato

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|    | repetitions |
|----|-------------|
| V1 | legato slow |
| V2 | portato     |
| V3 | staccato    |

### Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced

#### O1 PTr Perf-Universal

Samples: 1616 RAM: 101 MB Level 2

Interval performances

Legato without vibrato, sustain crossfading, normal, and fast

Marcato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|                | H1     | H2     | H3   |
|----------------|--------|--------|------|
| legato no vib. | slow   | normal | fast |
| marcato        | normal | normal | fast |

**02 PTr Perf-Trill Speed****Samples: 1265 RAM: 79 MB Level 2**

Multi interval performances  
 Legato without vibrato, and trills  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|    | H1     | H2     |
|----|--------|--------|
| V1 | legato | trills |

**03 PTr Short+Long notes - All****Samples: 1141 RAM: 71 MB Level 2**

Single notes  
 Staccato, portato short and medium, portato long with soft attack and light vibrato, and normal with strong and without vibrato  
 Sustained with light, strong, progressive, and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|    | C1       | C#1         | D1        | D#1                   | E1               |
|----|----------|-------------|-----------|-----------------------|------------------|
| V1 | staccato | port. short | port.med. | port.long light vib.  | sus. light vib.  |
| V2 | %        | %           | %         | port.long strong vib. | sus. strong vib. |
| V3 | %        | %           | %         | port.long light vib.  | sus. prog. vib.  |
| V4 | %        | %           | %         | port.long no vib.     | sus. no vib.     |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard****11 PTr Perf-Legato Speed****Samples: 827 RAM: 51 MB Level 2**

Interval performances  
 Legato with sustain crossfading, normal without vibrato, and fast  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1     | H2             | H3   |
|--------|--------|----------------|------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal no vib. | fast |

**12 PTr Perf-Marcato Speed****Samples: 870 RAM: 54 MB Level 2**

Interval performances^mMarcato normal and fast  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2   |
|---------|--------|------|
| marcato | normal | fast |

**13 PTr Short notes****Samples: 836 RAM: 52 MB Level 2**

Single notes  
 Staccato, portato short and medium, portato long with soft attack and light vibrato, portato long with normal attack, with strong and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|    | C1       | C#1         | D1           | D#1                  | E1                    | F1                |
|----|----------|-------------|--------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| V1 | staccato | port. short | port. medium | port.long light vib. | port.long strong vib. | port.long no vib. |

**14 PTr Long notes - All****Samples: 389 RAM: 24 MB Level 2**

Single notes

Sustained with light, strong, progressive, and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D#1

|           | C1            | C#1            | D1            | D#1        |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|---------------|------------|
| sustained | light vibrato | strong vibrato | prog. vibrato | no vibrato |

**15 PTr Dynamics - Small****Samples: 206 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Crescendo and diminuendo with vibrato, 2, 3, and 5 sec.

Fortepiano and sforzato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C1     | C#1    | D1     |
|-----------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn. vib. | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 5 sec. |
| fp        | %      | %      | %      |
| sfz       | %      | %      | %      |
| sffz      | %      | %      | %      |

**16 PTr Dynamics - Large****Samples: 599 RAM: 37 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Crescendo and diminuendo with and without vibrato, 1.5, 2, 3, and 5 (4) sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato, 5 and 9 sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 4, 8, and 12 sec.

Fortepiano and sforzato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 5 zones

|              | C1       | C#1    | D1      | D#1     |
|--------------|----------|--------|---------|---------|
| dyn. vib.    | 1.5 sec. | 2 sec. | 3 sec.  | 5 sec.  |
| dyn. no vib. | 1.5 sec. | 2 sec. | 3 sec.  | 4 sec.  |
| pfp vib.     | 5 sec.   | 5 sec. | 9 sec.  | 9 sec.  |
| pfp no vib.  | 4 sec.   | 8 sec. | 12 sec. | 12 sec. |
| fp/sfz       | fp       | fp     | sfz     | sfz     |

**17 PTr Flutter****Samples: 58 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Flutter tonguing

Normal, crescendo, and normal/crescendo with Cell crossfading

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1

|         | C1     | C#1       | D1      |
|---------|--------|-----------|---------|
| flutter | normal | crescendo | Cell XF |

**18 PTr Trills - slow****Samples: 186 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Trills, slow: Half and whole tone

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    |             |
|----|-------------|
|    | trills slow |
| V1 | half tone   |
| V2 | whole tone  |

**19 PTr Trills - fast****Samples: 184 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Trills, fast: Half and whole tone

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | trills fast |
|----|-------------|
| V1 | half tone   |
| V2 | whole tone  |

**20 PTr Trills - accelerando****Samples: 184 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Trills, accelerando: Half and whole tone

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | trills accel. |
|----|---------------|
| V1 | half tone     |
| V2 | whole tone    |

**21 PTr Trills - All****Samples: 554 RAM: 34 MB Level 2**

Trills slow, fast, and accelerando

Half and whole tone

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|            | C1   | C#1  | D1          |
|------------|------|------|-------------|
| half tone  | slow | fast | accelerando |
| whole tone | slow | fast | accelerando |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 PTr Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 762 RAM: 47 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Slow and fast legato, portato, staccato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D#1

|    | C1          | C#1         | D1      | D#1      |
|----|-------------|-------------|---------|----------|
| V1 | legato slow | legato fast | portato | staccato |

**32 PTr Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 762 RAM: 47 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Slow and fast legato, portato, staccato

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 4 zones

|    | H1          | H2          | H3      | H4       |
|----|-------------|-------------|---------|----------|
| V1 | legato slow | legato fast | portato | staccato |

**33 PTr Fast-Repetitions****Samples: 348 RAM: 21 MB Level 2**

Fast repetitions: Staccato, 140–180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|           | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 140 | 150 | 160 | 170 | 180 | 200 |

**34 PTr Upbeats a1****Samples: 488 RAM: 30 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 80–140, 160, 180, 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–A1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 | A1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**35 PTr Upbeats a2****Samples: 480 RAM: 30 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–A1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 | A1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**36 PTr Upbeats a3****Samples: 480 RAM: 30 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–A1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 | A1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**37 PTr Upbeats all****Samples: 1448 RAM: 90 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–A1 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 | A1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| 2 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| 3 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase****41 PTr Scale runs-legato - Major****Samples: 93 RAM: 5 MB Level 2**

Octave runs, legato, C to B major

AB switch up/down

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–B1

|             | C1 | C#1 | D1 | D#1 | E1 | F1 | F#1 | G1 | G#1 | A1 | A#1 | B1 |
|-------------|----|-----|----|-----|----|----|-----|----|-----|----|-----|----|
| legato maj. | C  | C#  | D  | D#  | E  | F  | F#  | G  | G#  | A  | A#  | B  |

**51 PTr Mordents-legato****Samples: 288 RAM: 18 MB Level 2**

Mordents, legato, var. 1 to 6

AB switch up/down

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|           | C1            | C#1           | D1                | D#1               | E1                | F1                |
|-----------|---------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| variation | mord. min.2nd | mord. maj.2nd | min.2nd - min.2nd | min.2nd - maj.2nd | maj.2nd - min.2nd | maj.2nd - maj.2nd |

**52 PTr Grace notes - All****Samples: 166 RAM: 10 MB Level 2**

Grace notes, minor and major 2nd

AB switch up/down

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–C#1

|          | C1       | C#1      |
|----------|----------|----------|
| interval | min. 2nd | maj. 2nd |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel****71 PTr Legato slow - cre6****Samples: 78 RAM: 4 MB Level 2**

Slow legato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |

**72 PTr Legato fast - cre6****Samples: 72 RAM: 4 MB Level 2**

Fast legato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |

**73 PTr Staccato - cre9****Samples: 108 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**74 PTr Combi - cre6****Samples: 150 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Slow and fast legato: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|             | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| legato slow | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |
| legato fast | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**75 PTr Legato slow - dim6****Samples: 72 RAM: 4 MB Level 2**

Slow legato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |

**76 PTr Legato fast - dim6****Samples: 72 RAM: 4 MB Level 2**

Fast legato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |

**77 PTr Staccato - dim9****Samples: 108 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**78 PTr Combi - dim6****Samples: 144 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Slow and fast legato: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|             | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| legato slow | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |
| legato fast | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**Presets****PTr VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 2214 RAM: 138 MB Level 1**

L1 PTr Perf-Legato Speed

L1 PTr Articulation Combi

L1 PTr Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C2–D2**PTr VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 3912 RAM: 244 MB Level 2**

01 PTr Perf-Universal

02 PTr Perf-Trill Speed

L1 PTr Articulation Combi

31 PTr Perf-Repetitions - Combi

73 PTr Staccato - cre9

**Preset keyswitches:** C2–E2

## 53 Bass trumpet

### Description

The bass trumpet was introduced to the orchestra by Richard Wagner in his “Ring of the Nibelung” to symbolize the fortitude and dominance of his heroes. The instrument is found chiefly in late Romantic orchestral works by Wagner, Strauss, Stravinsky and Janacek. In today’s orchestral practice the bass trumpet is played by a trombonist because the instrument’s mouthpiece is similar in size to the trombone’s.

### Range and notation

The bass trumpet in Bb has a range from E2–C5. It is notated in treble clef; being a transposing instrument it is written a major ninth higher than it sounds.

### Sound characteristics

The bass trumpet has a mighty, full and dark timbre, which exhibits the typical trumpet characteristics in all registers. In the low register it is similar to the timbre of the tenor trombone, although it lacks the latter’s warmth and fullness.

### Combination with other instruments

Generally the bass trumpet is used in combination with other trumpets and brass instruments, for example in octaves as the bottom trumpet part, as the fundamental note of a trumpet chord or as the highest voice together with trombones. The enormous dynamic intensity of a note played fortissimo in the lower register corresponds roughly to three trumpets or four horns.

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: D2–C#5



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato short

Sustained with light and without vibrato

**Level 2:** Portato short with soft attack

Portato medium with and without vibrato, marcato, and with soft attack

Portato long, with normal (2 variations), progressive, and without vibrato, marcato and soft attack

Sustained with normal, progressive, and without vibrato

#### 01 BTr\_staccato

Samples: 198

RAM: 12 MB

Level 1

Staccato

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 02 BTr\_portato\_short

Samples: 198

RAM: 12 MB

Level 1

Portato, short

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 03 BTr\_portato\_short\_soft

Samples: 198

RAM: 12 MB

Level 2

Portato, short, soft attack

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 04 BTr\_portato\_medium\_Vib

Samples: 198

RAM: 12 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, with vibrato

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 05 BTr\_portato\_medium\_noVib

Samples: 198

RAM: 12 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, without vibrato

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 06 BTr\_portato\_medium\_marc

Samples: 66

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, marcato

2 velocity layers

2 Alternations

#### 07 BTr\_portato\_medium\_soft

Samples: 198

RAM: 12 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, soft attack

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

|   |                      |                     |                   |
|---|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <b>08 BTr_portato_long-1_Vib</b>  | <b>Samples: 212</b>  | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>    |
| Portato, long, with vibrato, var. 1<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations     |                      |                     |                   |
| <b>09 BTr_portato_long-2_Vib</b>  | <b>Samples: 212</b>  | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>    |
| Portato, long, with vibrato, var. 2<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations     |                      |                     |                   |
| <b>10 BTr_portato_long_Vib-progr</b>  | <b>Samples: 212</b>  | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>    |
| Portato, long, with progressive vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations |                      |                     |                   |
| <b>11 BTr_portato_long_noVib</b>  | <b>Samples: 212</b>  | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>    |
| Portato, long, without vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations          |                      |                     |                   |
| <b>12 BTr_portato_long_marc</b>   | <b>Samples: 146</b>  | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>    | <b>Level 2</b>    |
| Portato, long, marcato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples                                    |                      |                     |                   |
| <b>13 BTr_portato_long_soft</b>   | <b>Samples: 212</b>  | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>    |
| Portato, long, soft attack<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations              |                      |                     |                   |
| <b>21 BTr_sus_Vib</b>   | <b>Samples: 212</b>  | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b>   | <b>Level 1</b>    |
| Sustained, with vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples                                   |                      |                     |                   |
| <b>22 BTr_sus_Vib-progr</b>   | <b>Range: E1-C#5</b> | <b>Samples: 160</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> |
| <b>Level 2</b><br>Sustained, with progressive vibrato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples     |                      |                     |                   |
| <b>23 BTr_sus_noVib</b>   | <b>Samples: 212</b>  | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b>   | <b>Level 1</b>    |
| Sustained, without vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples                                |                      |                     |                   |

**02 DYNAMICS****Range: D2–C#5**

Dynamics

**Level 1:** Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 4 and 6 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato

**Level 2:** Medium crescendo and diminuendo with vibrato, 1.5, 3, and 5 sec.; without vibrato, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo with vibrato, 3, 4, and 6 sec.; without vibrato, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato, 6 sec.; without vibrato, 8 sec.

Sforzatisimo

**01 BTr\_dyn-me\_Vib\_1'5s****Samples: 132****RAM: 8 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 1.5 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**02 BTr\_dyn-me\_Vib\_3s****Samples: 132****RAM: 8 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 3 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**03 BTr\_dyn-me\_Vib\_5s****Samples: 132****RAM: 8 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 5 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**11 BTr\_dyn-me\_noVib\_1s****Samples: 132****RAM: 8 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 1 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**12 BTr\_dyn-me\_noVib\_1'5s****Samples: 132****RAM: 8 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 1.5 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**13 BTr\_dyn-me\_noVib\_2s****Samples: 132****RAM: 8 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 2 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**14 BTr\_dyn-me\_noVib\_3s****Samples: 132****RAM: 8 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 3 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**15 BTr\_dyn-me\_noVib\_4s****Samples: 132****RAM: 8 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 4 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

|   |                       |                    |                  |
|---|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <b>21 BTr_dyn-str_Vib_3s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 3 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo      |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>22 BTr_dyn-str_Vib_4s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo      |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>23 BTr_dyn-str_Vib_6s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, with vibrato, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo      |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>31 BTr_dyn-str_noVib_1s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 1 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>32 BTr_dyn-str_noVib_1'5s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 1.5 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>33 BTr_dyn-str_noVib_2s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 2 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>34 BTr_dyn-str_noVib_3s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 3 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>35 BTr_dyn-str_noVib_4s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>36 BTr_dyn-str_noVib_6s</b>  | <b>Samples: 66</b>    | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>   | <b>Level 2</b>   |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, without vibrato, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                       |                    |                  |
| <b>40 BTr_pfp_Vib_6s</b>  | <b>Range: D#1–C#5</b> | <b>Samples: 40</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> |
| <b>Level 2</b><br>Crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer                                   |                       |                    |                  |

|  |                       |                     |                  |   |
|--|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------|---|
| <b>41 BTr_pfp_noVib_4s</b>   | <b>Range: D#1–C#5</b> | <b>Samples: 40</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer   |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>42 BTr_pfp_noVib_6s</b>   | <b>Range: D#1–C#5</b> | <b>Samples: 40</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer   |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>43 BTr_pfp_noVib_8s</b>   | <b>Range: D#1–C#5</b> | <b>Samples: 40</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 8 sec.<br>1 velocity layer   |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>51 BTr_fp</b>   |                       | <b>Samples: 33</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Fortepiano<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations   |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>52 BTr_sfz</b>  |                       | <b>Samples: 33</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Sforzato<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations   |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>53 BTr_sffz</b>   |                       | <b>Samples: 33</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Sforzatissimo<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations  |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>03 FLATTER + TRILLS</b>   | <b>Range: D2–C#5</b>  |                     |                  |  |
| Flutter tonguing and trills<br><b>Level 1:</b> Flutter tonguing, normal and crescendo<br>Trills, minor and major 2nd |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>01 BTr_flutter</b>  |                       | <b>Samples: 66</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Flutter tonguing<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples  |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>02 BTr_flutter_cre</b>  |                       | <b>Samples: 33</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Flutter tonguing, crescendo<br>1 velocity layer  |                       |                     |                  |   |
| <b>11 BTr_trill_1</b>  |                       | <b>Samples: 132</b> | <b>RAM: 8 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Trills, minor 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples  |                       |                     |                  |   |

**12 BTr\_trill\_2****Samples: 126**   **RAM: 7 MB**   **Level 1**

Trills, major 2nd  
 2 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**10 PERF INTERVAL****Range: D2–C#5**

Interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato without vibrato**Level 2:** Legato without vibrato, sustain crossfading

Legato with vibrato, normal and with sustain crossfading

Marcato

**01 BTr\_perf-legato\_noVib****Samples: 794**   **RAM: 49 MB**   **Level 1**

Legato without vibrato  
 2 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**02 BTr\_perf-legato\_noVib\_sus****Samples: 794**   **RAM: 49 MB**   **Level 2**

Legato without vibrato  
 Sustain crossfading  
 2 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**03 BTr\_perf-legato\_Vib****Samples: 794**   **RAM: 49 MB**   **Level 2**

Legato, with vibrato  
 2 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**04 BTr\_perf-legato\_Vib\_sus****Samples: 794**   **RAM: 49 MB**   **Level 2**

Legato, with vibrato  
 Sustain crossfading  
 2 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**05 BTr\_perf-marcato****Samples: 860**   **RAM: 53 MB**   **Level 2**

Marcato  
 2 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**11 PERF INTERVAL FAST**

Range: D2–C#5



Fast interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato**Level 2:** Marcato**01 BTr\_perf-legato\_fa**

Samples: 920

RAM: 57 MB

**Level 1**

Legato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 BTr\_perf-marcato\_fa**

Samples: 990

RAM: 61 MB

**Level 2**

Marcato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**12 PERF REPETITION**

Range: D2–C#5



Repetition performances

**Level 1:** Legato slow

Portato

Staccato fast

**Level 2:** Legato fast

Staccato slow

Legato dynamics

Portato, staccato slow and fast crescendo

**01 BTr\_perf-rep\_leg-sl**

Samples: 170

RAM: 10 MB

**Level 1**

Repetition performances: Legato, slow

2 velocity layers

**02 BTr\_perf-rep\_leg-fa**

Samples: 204

RAM: 12 MB

**Level 2**

Repetition performances: Legato, fast

2 velocity layers

**03 BTr\_perf-rep\_por**

Samples: 306

RAM: 19 MB

**Level 1**

Repetition performances: Portato

2 velocity layers

**04 BTr\_perf-rep\_sta-sl**

Samples: 306

RAM: 19 MB

**Level 2**

Repetition performances: Staccato, slow

2 velocity layers

**05 BTr\_perf-rep\_sta-fa**

Samples: 306

RAM: 19 MB

**Level 1**

Repetition performances: Staccato, fast

2 velocity layers

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>21 BTr_perf-rep_dyn6_leg-sl</b>   | <b>Samples: 204</b> | <b>RAM: 12 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Legato dynamics, slow, 6 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                   |                |
| <b>22 BTr_perf-rep_dyn6_leg-fa</b>   | <b>Samples: 204</b> | <b>RAM: 12 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Legato dynamics, fast, 6 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                   |                |
| <b>23 BTr_perf-rep_cre9_por</b>  | <b>Samples: 153</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Portato crescendo, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                   |                |
| <b>24 BTr_perf-rep_cre9_sta-sl</b>   | <b>Samples: 153</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato crescendo, slow, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer                                 |                     |                   |                |
| <b>25 BTr_perf-rep_cre9_sta-fa</b>   | <b>Samples: 153</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato crescendo, fast, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer                                 |                     |                   |                |

**13 FAST REPETITION****Range: D2–C#5**

Fast repetitions

**Level 2:** Staccato, 9 repetitions, 150 to 180, and 200 BPM

Normal and crescendo

|   |                     |                  |                |
|---|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 BTr_fast-rep_150 (160/170/180/200)</b>                                      | <b>Samples: 132</b> | <b>RAM: 8 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Fast repetitions: 150 to 180, and 200 BPM<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples |                     |                  |                |
| <b>11 BTr_fast-rep_150_cre (160/170/180/200)</b>                                  | <b>Samples: 33</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Fast repetitions<br>Crescendo, 150 to 180, and 200 BPM<br>1 velocity layer        |                     |                  |                |

**14 UPBEAT REPETITION**

Upbeat repetitions

**Level 2:** 1–3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM**A Single Upbeat**

Range: D2–C#5

**01 BTr\_UB-a1\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 66

RAM: 4 MB

**Level 2**

1 upbeat, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

2 velocity layers

**B Double Upbeats**

Range: D2–C#5

**01 BTr\_UB-a2\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 66 RAM: 4 MB

**Level 2**

2 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

2 velocity layers

**C Triple Upbeats**

Range: D2–C#5

**01 BTr\_UB-a3\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 66 RAM: 4 MB

**Level 2**

3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

2 velocity layers

**15 GRACE NOTES**

Phrases

**Level 2:** Grace notes

Minor and major 2nd

Up and down

Mapped to target note

**01 BTr\_grace-1**

Range: D2–C5

Samples: 208

RAM: 13 MB

**Level 2**

Grace notes, minor 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

AB switch: up/down

**02 BTr\_grace-2**

Range: D2–C#5

Samples: 208

RAM: 13 MB

**Level 2**

Grace notes, major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

AB switch: up/down

**16 FX**

|                         |                      |                   |                  |                |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 BTr_duophonic</b> | <b>Range: D2–D#3</b> | <b>Samples: 6</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------|

Effects: Duophonic playing (tone and voice)  
1 velocity layer

|                               |                      |                    |                  |                |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 BTr_duophonic-gliss</b> | <b>Range: G2–F#3</b> | <b>Samples: 10</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Effects: Duophonic playing, glissandos  
1 velocity layer  
AB switch: up/down

|                      |                     |                    |                  |                |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 BTr_FX-rip</b> | <b>Range: D3–F4</b> | <b>Samples: 13</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Effects: Rips (sliding into the note)  
1 velocity layer

|                     |                      |                    |                  |                |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>04 BTr_falls</b> | <b>Range: G#3–E5</b> | <b>Samples: 27</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Effects: Falls (sliding down at the end of the note)  
Play ranges: Short falls G#3–E5, long falls C4–D5  
1 velocity layer  
AB switch: fall short/long

|                           |                     |                    |                  |                |
|---------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>05 BTr_falls-chrom</b> | <b>Range: C4–D5</b> | <b>Samples: 18</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Effects: Falls, chromatic  
1 velocity layer  
AB switch: fall short/long

**98 RESOURCES**

Resources

**Level 2:** Isolated dynamics repetitions: Legato slow and fast, staccato  
Single layer long notes

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>01 Perf Rep dyn</b> | <b>Range: D2–C#5</b> |
|------------------------|----------------------|

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 BTr_rep_cre6_leg-sl-1 (2/3/4/5/6)</b> | <b>Samples: 17</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions  
Legato, slow, crescendo, 1st to 6th note  
1 velocity layer

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 BTr_rep_dim6_leg-sl-1 (2/3/4/5/6)</b> | <b>Samples: 17</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions  
Legato, slow, diminuendo, 1st to 6th note  
1 velocity layer

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 BTr_rep_cre6_leg-fa-1 (2/3/4/5/6)</b> | <b>Samples: 17</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions  
Legato, fast, crescendo, 1st to 6th note  
1 velocity layer

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 BTr_rep_dim6_leg-fa-1 (2/3/4/5/6)</b> | <b>Samples: 17</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions

Legato, fast, diminuendo, 1st to 6th note  
1 velocity layer

---

**03 BTr\_rep\_cre9\_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)**

**Samples: 17    RAM: 1 MB    Level 2**

Extracted repetitions: Portato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

---

**04 BTr\_rep\_cre9\_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)**

**Samples: 17    RAM: 1 MB    Level 2**

Extracted repetitions: Staccato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

---

**02 Long Notes - Single Layer**

**Range: D2–C#5**

---

**01 BTr\_sus\_p\_noVib**

**Samples: 73    RAM: 4 MB    Level 2**

Sustained, piano, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

**02 BTr\_sus\_mf\_noVib**

**Samples: 73    RAM: 4 MB    Level 2**

Sustained, mezzopiano, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

**03 BTr\_sus\_f\_noVib**

**Samples: 73    RAM: 4 MB    Level 2**

Sustained, forte, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

**03 Perf Speed variation**


---

**99 RELEASE**

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

## Matrices

### Matrix - LEVEL 1

#### L1 BTr Articulation Combi

Samples: 1210 RAM: 75 MB **Level 1**

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato short, sustained with and without vibrato, crescendo-diminuendo with vibrato 6 sec., fortepiano and sforzato, flutter tonguing normal and crescendo, trills half and whole tone

|    | C1          | C#1         | D1           | D#1 | E1            | F1          |
|----|-------------|-------------|--------------|-----|---------------|-------------|
| V1 | stac        | sus vib.    | pfp vib. 6s. | fp  | flutter       | trill half  |
| V2 | port. short | sus no vib. | pfp vib. 6s. | sfz | flutter cres. | trill whole |

#### L1 BTr Perf-Legato Speed

Samples: 1048 RAM: 65 MB **Level 1**

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading, normal without vibrato, and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1     | H2             | H3   |
|--------|--------|----------------|------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal no vib. | fast |

#### L1 BTr Perf-Repetitions Combi

Samples: 782 RAM: 48 MB **Level 1**

Repetition performances

Legato slow

Portato

Staccato fast

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|    | repetitions   |
|----|---------------|
| V1 | legato slow   |
| V2 | portato       |
| V3 | staccato fast |

### Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced

#### 01 BTr Perf-Universal

**Level 2**

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading, normal without vibrato, and fast

Marcato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones      Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2             | H3   |
|---------|--------|----------------|------|
| legato  | sus-XF | normal no vib. | fast |
| marcato | normal | normal         | fast |

#### 02 BTr Short+Long notes

Samples: 1480 RAM: 92 MB **Level 2**

Single notes

Staccato, portato short, portato medium with and without vibrato, portato long with normal, progressive, and without vibrato

Sustained with normal, progressive, and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|    | C1       | C#1         | D1                | D#1                 | E1              |
|----|----------|-------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| V1 | staccato | port. short | port.med. vib.    | port.long vib.      | sus. vib.       |
| V2 | %        | %           | port.med. vib.    | port.long prog.vib. | sus. prog. vib. |
| V3 | %        | %           | port.med. no vib. | port.long no vib.   | sus. no vib.    |

## Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard

### 11 BTr Perf-Legato Speed

Samples: 1048 RAM: 65 MB Level 2

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading, normal without vibrato, and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1     | H2             | H3   |
|--------|--------|----------------|------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal no vib. | fast |

### 12 BTr Perf-Marcato Speed

Samples: 1118 RAM: 69 MB Level 2

Interval performances^mMarcato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2   |
|---------|--------|------|
| marcato | normal | fast |

### 13 BTr Short notes

Samples: 1103 RAM: 68 MB Level 2

Single notes

Staccato, portato short, portato long and medium with and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|    | C1       | C#1        | D1             | D#1               | E1             | F1                |
|----|----------|------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| V1 | staccato | port.short | port.med. vib. | port.med. no vib. | port.long vib. | port.long no vib. |

### 14 BTr Long notes - All

Samples: 391 RAM: 24 MB Level 2

Single notes

Sustained with normal, progressive, and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1

|           | C1      | C#1           | D1         |
|-----------|---------|---------------|------------|
| sustained | vibrato | prog. vibrato | no vibrato |

### 15 BTr Dynamics - Small

Samples: 495 RAM: 30 MB Level 2

Dynamics

Medium crescendo and diminuendo with vibrato, 1.5, 3, and 5 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzatisimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|               | C1       | C#1    | D1     |
|---------------|----------|--------|--------|
| dyn.med. vib. | 1.5 sec. | 3 sec. | 5 sec. |
| fp            | %        | %      | %      |
| sfz           | %        | %      | %      |
| sffz          | %        | %      | %      |

**16 BTr Dynamics - Large****Samples: 1209 RAM: 75 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Medium crescendo and diminuendo with and without vibrato, 1.5, 3, and 5 (4) sec., strong crescendo and diminuendo without vibrato, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo without vibrato, 4, 6, and 8 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzattissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1 Vertical: Modwheel, 5 zones

|                  | C1         | C#1        | D1     |
|------------------|------------|------------|--------|
| dyn.med. vib.    | 1.5 sec.   | 3 sec.     | 5 sec. |
| dyn.med. no vib. | 1.5 sec.   | 3 sec.     | 4 sec. |
| dyn.str. no vib. | 2 sec.     | 3 sec.     | 4 sec. |
| ppf no vib.      | 4 sec. v.1 | 6 sec. v.2 | 8 sec. |
| fp/sfz/sffz      | fp         | sfz        | sffz   |

**17 BTr Flutter****Samples: 99 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Flutter tonguing

Normal, crescendo, and normal/crescendo with Cell crossfading

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1

|         | C1     | C#1       | D1      |
|---------|--------|-----------|---------|
| flutter | normal | crescendo | Cell XF |

**18 BTr Trills - normal****Samples: 258 RAM: 16 MB Level 2**

Trills, minor and major 2nd

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | H1       |
|----------|----------|
| interval | min. 2nd |
| V2       | maj. 2nd |

**19 BTr FX****Samples: 73 RAM: 4 MB Level 2**

Effects: Duophonic playing normal and glissando, rips, and falls normal and chromatic

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|    | C1        | C#1            | D1   | D#1          | E1              |
|----|-----------|----------------|------|--------------|-----------------|
| V1 | duophonic | duophon.gliss. | rips | falls normal | falls chromatic |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 BTr Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 1275 RAM: 79 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Slow and fast legato, portato, slow and fast staccato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|    | C1          | C#1         | D1      | D#1           | E1            |
|----|-------------|-------------|---------|---------------|---------------|
| V1 | legato slow | legato fast | portato | staccato slow | staccato fast |

**32 BTr Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 969 RAM: 60 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Slow and fast legato, portato, slow staccato

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 4 zones

|    | H1          | H2          | H3      | H4            |
|----|-------------|-------------|---------|---------------|
| V1 | legato slow | legato fast | portato | staccato slow |

**33 BTr Fast-Repetitions****Samples: 396 RAM: 24 MB Level 2**

Fast repetitions: Staccato, 9 repetitions, 150–180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|           | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 150 | 160 | 170 | 180 | 200 |

**34 BTr Upbeats a1****Samples: 660 RAM: 41 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–A1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 | A1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**35 BTr Upbeats a2****Samples: 660 RAM: 41 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–A1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 | A1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**36 BTr Upbeats a3****Samples: 660 RAM: 41 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–A1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 | A1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**37 BTr Upbeats all****Samples: 1980 RAM: 123 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–A1 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 | A1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| 2 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| 3 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase****51 BTr Grace notes - All****Samples: 336 RAM: 21 MB Level 2**

Grace notes, minor and major 2nd

AB switch up/down

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–C#1

|          | C1       | C#1      |
|----------|----------|----------|
| interval | min. 2nd | maj. 2nd |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel****71 BTr Legato slow - cre6****Samples: 102 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Slow legato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |

**72 BTr Legato fast - cre6****Samples: 102 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Fast legato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |

**73 BTr Portato - cre9****Samples: 153 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**74 BTr Staccato - cre9****Samples: 153 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**75 BTr Combi - cre6****Samples: 204 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Slow and fast legato: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|             | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| legato slow | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |
| legato fast | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**76 BTr Combi - cre9****Samples: 306 RAM: 19 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**77 BTr Legato slow - dim6****Samples: 102 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Slow legato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |

**78 BTr Legato fast - dim6****Samples: 102 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Fast legato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |

**79 BTr Combi - dim6****Samples: 204 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Slow and fast legato: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 6 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|             | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  |
|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| legato slow | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th |
| legato fast | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**Presets****BTr VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 2894 RAM: 180 MB Level 1**

L1 BTr Perf-Legato Speed  
 L1 BTr Articulation Combi  
 L1 BTr Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C6–D6**BTr VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 4665 RAM: 291 MB Level 2**

01 BTr Perf-Universal  
 01 BTr Perf-Universal  
 L1 BTr Articulation Combi  
 31 BTr Perf-Repetitions - Combi  
 76 BTr Combi - cre9

**Preset keyswitches:** C6–E6

# 55 Horn-Triple

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: A1–G5



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato short

Sustained

**Level 2:** Portato medium

#### 01 H02\_staccato

Samples: 360

RAM: 22 MB

**Level 1**

Staccato

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 02 H02\_portato\_short

Samples: 360

RAM: 22 MB

**Level 1**

Portato, short

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 03 H02\_portato\_medium

Samples: 358

RAM: 22 MB

**Level 2**

Portato, medium

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 21 H02\_sus

Samples: 316

RAM: 19 MB

**Level 1**

Sustained

4 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 DYNAMICS****Range: A1–G5**

Dynamics

**Level 1:** Crescendo-diminuendo, 2 and 4 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato

**Level 2:** Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo, 3 and 8 sec.

Sforzatissimo

---

|                           |                     |                  |                |
|---------------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 H02_dyn-li_1'5s</b> | <b>Samples: 138</b> | <b>RAM: 8 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|

Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5 sec.

3 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                  |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 H02_dyn-li_2s</b> | <b>Samples: 138</b> | <b>RAM: 8 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|

Light crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.

3 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                  |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 H02_dyn-li_3s</b> | <b>Samples: 138</b> | <b>RAM: 8 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|

Light crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.

3 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                  |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>04 H02_dyn-li_4s</b> | <b>Samples: 138</b> | <b>RAM: 8 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------|

Light crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.

3 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                           |                     |                   |                |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>11 H02_dyn-me_1'5s</b> | <b>Samples: 180</b> | <b>RAM: 11 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                   |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>12 H02_dyn-me_2s</b> | <b>Samples: 180</b> | <b>RAM: 11 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                   |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>13 H02_dyn-me_3s</b> | <b>Samples: 180</b> | <b>RAM: 11 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                   |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>14 H02_dyn-me_4s</b> | <b>Samples: 180</b> | <b>RAM: 11 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>15 H02_dyn-me_6s</b><br>Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 6 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo | <b>Samples: 92</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>21 H02_dyn-str_2s</b><br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>22 H02_dyn-str_3s</b><br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>23 H02_dyn-str_4s</b><br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>24 H02_dyn-str_6s</b><br>Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>31 H02_pfp_2s</b><br>Crescendo-diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>2 velocity layers  | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| <b>32 H02_pfp_3s</b><br>Crescendo-diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>2 velocity layers  | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>33 H02_pfp_4s</b><br>Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>2 velocity layers  | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| <b>34 H02_pfp_8s</b><br>Crescendo-diminuendo, 8 sec.<br>1 velocity layer   | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>41 H02_fp</b><br>Fortepiano<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations   | <b>Samples: 45</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| <b>42 H02_sfz</b><br>Sforzato<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations  | <b>Samples: 45</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>43 H02_sffz</b>                                  | <b>Samples: 45</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sforzatissimo<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations |                    |                  |                |

|                   |                     |   |
|-------------------|---------------------|---|
| <b>03 FLATTER</b> | <b>Range: A1–G5</b> |  |
|-------------------|---------------------|---|

**Level 1:** Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 H02_flutter</b>                                   | <b>Samples: 88</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Flutter tonguing<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples |                    |                  |                |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 H02_flutter_cre</b>                       | <b>Samples: 45</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Flutter tonguing, crescendo<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

|                         |                     |   |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---|
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b> | <b>Range: A1–G5</b> |  |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---|

Interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato

**Level 2:** Marcato

|  |                      |                   |                |
|--|----------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 H02_perf-legato</b>                      | <b>Samples: 1206</b> | <b>RAM: 75 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Legato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples |                      |                   |                |

|   |                      |                   |                |
|---|----------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 H02_perf-marcato</b>                      | <b>Samples: 1206</b> | <b>RAM: 75 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Marcato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples |                      |                   |                |

|                              |                     |   |
|------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| <b>11 PERF INTERVAL FAST</b> | <b>Range: A1–G5</b> |  |
|------------------------------|---------------------|---|

Fast interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato

**Level 2:** Marcato

|  |                      |                   |                |
|--|----------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 H02_perf-legato_fa</b>                         | <b>Samples: 1414</b> | <b>RAM: 88 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Legato, fast<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples |                      |                   |                |

**02 H02\_perf-marcato\_fa****Samples: 1414 RAM: 88 MB Level 2**

Marcato, fast  
 2 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**12 PERF TRILL****Range: A1–G5**

Multi interval performances

**Level 2:** Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd**01 H02\_perf-trill****Samples: 1996 RAM: 124 MB Level 2**

Performance trills, legato, minor to major 2nd  
 2 velocity layers  
 Release samples

**13 PERF REPETITION****Range: A1–G5**

Repetition performances

**Level 1:** Legato

Portato

Staccato

**Level 2:** Dynamics for all repetitions**01 H02\_perf-rep\_leg****Samples: 345 RAM: 21 MB Level 1**

Repetition performances: Legato  
 3 velocity layers

**02 H02\_perf-rep\_por****Samples: 621 RAM: 38 MB Level 1**

Repetition performances: Portato  
 3 velocity layers

**03 H02\_perf-rep\_sta****Samples: 621 RAM: 38 MB Level 1**

Repetition performances: Staccato  
 3 velocity layers

**21 H02\_perf-rep\_dyn5\_leg****Samples: 230 RAM: 14 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances: Legato dynamics, 5 repetitions  
 1 velocity layer  
 AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**22 H02\_perf-rep\_dyn9\_por****Samples: 414 RAM: 25 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances: Portato dynamics, 9 repetitions  
 1 velocity layer  
 AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**23 H02\_perf-rep\_dyn9\_sta****Samples: 414 RAM: 25 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, 9 repetitions  
 1 velocity layer  
 AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**14 FAST REPETITION**

Range: A1–G5



Fast repetitions

**Level 2:** Staccato, 9 repetitions, 140 to 180 BPM

Normal and dynamics

**01 H02\_fast-rep\_140 (150/160/170/180)**

Samples: 69

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

Fast repetitions: 140–180 BPM

3 velocity layers

Release samples

**11 H02\_fast-rep\_140\_dyn (150/160/170/180)**

Samples: 46

RAM: 2 MB

Level 2

Fast repetitions: Dynamics, 140–180 BPM

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**15 UPBEAT REPETITION**

Range: A1–G5

Upbeat repetitions

**Level 2:** 1–3 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM**A Single Upbeat**

Range: A1–G5

**01 H02\_UB-a1\_90 (100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 69

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

1 upbeat, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

3 velocity layers

**B Double Upbeats**

Range: A1–G5

**01 H02\_UB-a2\_90 (100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 69

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

2 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

3 velocity layers

**C Triple Upbeats**

Range: A1–G5

**01 H02\_UB-a3\_90 (100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)**

Samples: 69

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

3 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

3 velocity layers

**16 GLISSANDI****Range: A1–F#5**

Interval performances/Phrases

**Level 2:** Performance glissandos, minor 3rd to octave

Fixed glissandos, 4th to octave, up and down

Slow octave glissando

Please note that fixed glissandos have different up and down ranges.

| <b>01 H02_perf-gliss</b>  | <b>Range: A1–G5</b> | <b>Samples: 471</b> | <b>RAM: 29 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Glissando, minor 3rd to octave<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 H02_gliss-5</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 40</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, 4th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down              |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>12 H02_gliss-6</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 38</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, diminished 5th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>13 H02_gliss-7</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 38</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, 5th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down              |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>14 H02_gliss-8</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 36</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, minor 6th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down        |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>15 H02_gliss-9</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 36</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, major 6th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down        |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>16 H02_gliss-10</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 34</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, minor 7th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down        |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>17 H02_gliss-11</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 34</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, major 7th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down        |                     |                     |                   |                |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>18 H02_gliss-12</b>                                      | <b>Samples: 34</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, octave<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down |                    |                  |                |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>19 H02_gliss-12-slow</b>                                       | <b>Samples: 33</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, slow, octave<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down |                    |                  |                |

## 98 RESOURCES

Resources

**Level 2:** Isolated dynamics repetitions: Legato, portato, and staccato

Single layer long notes

### 01 Perf Rep dyn Range: A1–G5

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 H02_rep_cre5_leg-1 (2/3/4/5)</b>  | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions<br>Legato, crescendo, 1st to 5th note<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 H02_rep_dim5_leg-1 (2/3/4/5)</b>   | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions<br>Legato, diminuendo, 1st to 5th note<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 H02_rep_cre9_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>                                 | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Portato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 H02_rep_dim9_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>                                  | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Portato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 H02_rep_cre9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>                                  | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Staccato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 H02_rep_dim9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>                                   | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Staccato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

### 02 Long Notes - Single Layer Range: A1–G5

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 H02_sus_p_noVib</b>  | <b>Samples: 90</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, piano, without vibrato<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples |                    |                  |                |

---

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 H02_sus_mp_noVib</b>  | <b>Samples: 90</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, mezzopiano, without vibrato<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples |                    |                  |                |
| <hr/>   |                    |                  |                |
| <b>03 H02_sus_f_noVib</b>   | <b>Samples: 90</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, forte, without vibrato<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples      |                    |                  |                |
| <hr/>   |                    |                  |                |
| <b>04 H02_sus_ff_noVib</b>  | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, fortissimo, without vibrato<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples |                    |                  |                |

---

## 99 RELEASE

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

# Matrices

## Matrix - LEVEL 1

### L1 H02 Articulation Combi

Samples: 1351 RAM: 84 MB [Level 1](#)

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato short, sustained, crescendo-diminuendo 2 and 4 sec., fortepiano and sforzato, flutter tonguing normal and crescendo

|    | C1          | C#1       | D1      | D#1 | E1            |
|----|-------------|-----------|---------|-----|---------------|
| V1 | staccato    | sustained | ppf 2s. | fp  | flutter       |
| V2 | port. short | sustained | ppf 4s. | sfz | flutter cres. |

### L1 H02 Perf-Legato Speed

Samples: 1590 RAM: 99 MB [Level 1](#)

Interval performances

Legato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|        | H1     | H2   |
|--------|--------|------|
| legato | normal | fast |

### L1 H02 Perf-Repetitions Combi

Samples: 1587 RAM: 99 MB [Level 1](#)

Repetition performances

Legato

Portato

Staccato

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|    | repetitions |
|----|-------------|
| V1 | legato      |
| V2 | portato     |
| V3 | staccato    |

## Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced

### 01 H02 Perf-Universal

Samples: 3090 RAM: 193 MB [Level 2](#)

Interval performances

Legato normal and fast

Marcato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones      Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2   |
|---------|--------|------|
| legato  | normal | fast |
| marcato | normal | fast |

**02 H02 Perf-Trill Speed****Samples: 2262 RAM: 141 MB Level 2**

Multi interval performances  
 Legato and trills  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|    | H1             | H2     |
|----|----------------|--------|
| V1 | legato no vib. | trills |

**03 H02 Short+Long notes - All****Samples: 1394 RAM: 87 MB Level 2**

Single notes  
 Staccato, portato short and medium, and sustained

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D#1

|    | C1       | C#1         | D1        | D#1       |
|----|----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| V1 | staccato | port. short | port.med. | sustained |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard****11 H02 Perf-Legato Speed****Samples: 1590 RAM: 99 MB Level 2**

Interval performances  
 Legato normal and fast  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|        | H1     | H2   |
|--------|--------|------|
| legato | normal | fast |

**12 H02 Perf-Marcato Speed****Samples: 1590 RAM: 99 MB Level 2**

Interval performances  
 Marcato normal and fast  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2   |
|---------|--------|------|
| marcato | normal | fast |

**13 H02 Dynamics - Small****Samples: 675 RAM: 42 MB Level 2**

Dynamics  
 Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.  
 Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzatisissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|            | C1     | C#1    | D1     |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.medium | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. |
| fp         | %      | %      | %      |
| sfz        | %      | %      | %      |
| sffz       | %      | %      | %      |

**14 H02 Dynamics - Large****Samples: 1526 RAM: 95 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Light crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Medium and strong crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo, 2, 3, 4, and 8 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzattissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 5 zones

|             | C1     | C#1    | D1     | D#1    |
|-------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.light   | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. | 4 sec. |
| dyn.medium  | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. | 6 sec. |
| dyn.strong  | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. | 6 sec. |
| ppf         | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. | 8 sec. |
| fp/sfz/sffz | fp     | sfz    | sffz   | sffz   |

**15 H02 Flutter****Samples: 133 RAM: 8 MB Level 2**

Flutter tonguing

Normal, crescendo, and normal/crescendo with Cell crossfading

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1

|         | C1     | C#1       | D1      |
|---------|--------|-----------|---------|
| flutter | normal | crescendo | Cell XF |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 H02 Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 1587 RAM: 99 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Legato, portato, and staccato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1

|    | C1     | C#1     | D1       |
|----|--------|---------|----------|
| V1 | legato | portato | staccato |

**32 H02 Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 1587 RAM: 99 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Legato, portato, and staccato

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|    | H1     | H2      | H3       |
|----|--------|---------|----------|
| V1 | legato | portato | staccato |

**33 H02 Fast-Repetitions****Samples: 414 RAM: 25 MB Level 2**

Fast repetitions: Staccato, 140–180 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|           | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 140 | 150 | 160 | 170 | 180 |

**34 H02 Upbeats a1****Samples: 621 RAM: 38 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**35 H02 Upbeats a2****Samples: 621 RAM: 38 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**36 H02 Upbeats a3****Samples: 621 RAM: 38 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**37 H02 Upbeats all****Samples: 1863 RAM: 116 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| 2 upbeats | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| 3 upbeats | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel****71 H02 Legato - cre5****Samples: 115 RAM: 7 MB Level 2**

Legato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**72 H02 Portato - cre9****Samples: 207 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**73 H02 Staccato - cre9****Samples: 207 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**74 H02 Combi - cre9****Samples: 414 RAM: 25 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**75 H02 Legato - dim5****Samples: 115 RAM: 7 MB Level 2**

Legato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**76 H02 Portato - dim9****Samples: 207 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**77 H02 Staccato - dim9****Samples: 207 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**78 H02 Combi - dim9****Samples: 414 RAM: 25 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

## Presets

---

**H02 VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 4438 RAM: 277 MB [Level 1](#)**

L1 H02 Perf-Legato Speed  
L1 H02 Articulation Combi  
L1 H02 Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C6–D6

---

**H02 VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 7408 RAM: 463 MB [Level 2](#)**

01 H02 Perf-Universal  
02 H02 Perf-Trill Speed  
L1 H02 Articulation Combi  
31 H02 Perf-Repetitions - Combi  
74 H02 Combi - cre9

**Preset keyswitches:** C6–E6

## 57 Bass trombone

### Description

From the middle of the 19th century the tenor-bass trombone, having “all round qualities”, replaced the bass trombone in orchestras and has been used as the third trombone ever since. In spite of the tenor-bass trombone’s wide range, a distinction has been made in recent times between the tenor-bass and bass trombone – both have the same length of tubing, but the bass trombone has a wider bore (from 13.8 mm), a wider bell (from 24.8 cm), an additional valve (either Eb or D) and a larger mouthpiece.

### Range and notation

The bass trombone has a range of Bb0–F5. Notation in the tenor and bass clefs, no transposition. All three trombone parts are usually written in tenor clef for the upper register and in bass clef for the lower.

### Sound characteristics

Brassy, powerful, overpowering, solid, tense, penetrating, dramatic, hard, full, sinister, soft, round.

In general the slightly wider bore of the bass trombone lends it a somewhat darker timbre and fuller sound. Especially the low notes have a powerful metallic sound, sforzando tones are easily executable. The highest notes are somewhat harder to play than on the tenor trombone.

### Combination with other instruments

The bass trombone is notated as the 3rd trombone in orchestral scores and often plays the tenor trombone’s lower octave or the contrabass trombone’s upper octave. Its sound is effective in multiple octave combinations as well as the fundamental bass. Since it shares its dark timbre with the cello, the double-bass, the bassoon and the contrabassoon it combines well with those instruments. The bass trombone is the carrying instrument, however, the bassoon or cello merely add color.

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: C1-E4



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato short

Sustained with and without vibrato

**Level 2:** Portato medium, normal and soft attack, and marcato

Portato long, with and without vibrato, with soft attack, and marcato

#### 01 BTB\_staccato

Samples: 296

RAM: 18 MB

Level 1

Staccato

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 02 BTB\_portato\_short

Samples: 296

RAM: 18 MB

Level 1

Portato, short

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 03 BTB\_portato\_medium

Samples: 295

RAM: 18 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 04 BTB\_portato\_medium\_soft

Samples: 296

RAM: 18 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, soft attack

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 05 BTB\_portato\_medium\_marc

Samples: 222

RAM: 13 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, marcato

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 06 BTB\_portato\_long\_Vib

Samples: 259

RAM: 16 MB

Level 2

Portato, long, with vibrato

4 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

#### 07 BTB\_portato\_long\_noVib

Samples: 259

RAM: 16 MB

Level 2

Portato, long, without vibrato

4 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>08 BTB_portato_long_soft</b>  | <b>Samples: 259</b> | <b>RAM: 16 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Portato, long, soft attack<br>4 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations |                     |                   |                |
| <b>09 BTB_portato_long_marc</b>  | <b>Samples: 185</b> | <b>RAM: 11 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Portato, long, marcato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples<br>2 Alternations     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 BTB_sus_Vib</b>  | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Sustained, with vibrato<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples                      |                     |                   |                |
| <b>12 BTB_sus_noVib</b>  | <b>Samples: 296</b> | <b>RAM: 18 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Sustained, without vibrato<br>5 velocity layers<br>Release samples                   |                     |                   |                |

**02 DYNAMICS**

Range: C1–E4



Dynamics

**Level 1:** Fortepiano, sforzato**Level 2:** Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, and 2 sec.

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.

Sforzatissimo

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 BTB_dyn-li_1'5s</b>  | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5 sec.<br>3 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                   |                |
| <b>02 BTB_dyn-li_2s</b>  | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Light crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>3 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 BTB_dyn-me_2s</b>  | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                   |                |
| <b>12 BTB_dyn-me_3s</b>  | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                   |                |

|   |                     |                  |   |
|---|---------------------|------------------|---|
| <b>13 BTB_dyn-me_4s</b>   | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                  |   |
| <b>21 BTB_dyn-str_4s</b>  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                  |   |
| <b>22 BTB_dyn-str_6s</b>  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                  |   |
| <b>31 BTB_fp</b>  | <b>Samples: 37</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Fortepiano<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                  |   |
| <b>32 BTB_sfz</b>   | <b>Samples: 37</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Sforzato<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                  |   |
| <b>33 BTB_sffz</b>  | <b>Samples: 37</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Sforzatisimo<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                  |   |
| <b>03 FLATTER</b>   |                     |                  |  |
|   |                     |                  | <b>Range: C2–E4</b>   |
| <b>Level 1:</b> Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo   |                     |                  |   |
| <b>01 BTB_flatter</b>   | <b>Samples: 100</b> | <b>RAM: 6 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Flutter tonguing<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples  |                     |                  |   |
| <b>02 BTB_flatter_cre</b>   | <b>Samples: 25</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Flutter tonguing, crescendo<br>1 velocity layer   |                     |                  |   |

**10 PERF INTERVAL**

Range: C1–E4



Interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato**Level 2:** Legato with sustain crossfading

Marcato

**01 BTB\_perf-legato**Samples: 892 RAM: 55 MB **Level 1**

Legato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 BTB\_perf-legato\_sus**Samples: 1003 RAM: 62 MB **Level 2**

Legato with sustain crossfading

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**03 BTB\_perf-marcato**Samples: 873 RAM: 54 MB **Level 2**

Marcato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**11 PERF INTERVAL FAST**

Range: C1–E4



Fast interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato**01 BTB\_perf-legato\_fa**Samples: 1038 RAM: 64 MB **Level 1**

Legato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**11 PERF REPETITION**

Range: C1–E4



Repetition performances

**Level 1:** Portato

Staccato fast

**Level 2:** Staccato slow

Dynamics for all repetitions

**01 BTB\_perf-rep\_por**Samples: 513 RAM: 32 MB **Level 1**

Repetition performances: Portato

3 velocity layers

**02 BTB\_perf-rep\_sta-sl**Samples: 513 RAM: 32 MB **Level 2**

Repetition performances: Staccato, slow

3 velocity layers

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 BTB_perf-rep_sta-fa</b>  | <b>Samples: 513</b> | <b>RAM: 32 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato, fast<br>3 velocity layers   |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 BTB_perf-rep_dyn9_por</b>  | <b>Samples: 342</b> | <b>RAM: 21 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Portato dynamics, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo        |                     |                   |                |
| <b>12 BTB_perf-rep_dyn9_sta-sl</b>   | <b>Samples: 342</b> | <b>RAM: 21 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, slow, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                   |                |
| <b>13 BTB_perf-rep_dyn9_sta-fa</b>   | <b>Samples: 342</b> | <b>RAM: 21 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, fast, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                   |                |

**12 FAST REPETITION****Range: C1–E4**

Fast repetitions

**Level 2:** Staccato, 9 repetitions, 150 to 190 BPM

Normal and dynamics

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 BTB_fast-rep_150 (160/170/180/190)</b>   | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Fast repetitions: 150–190 BPM<br>3 velocity layers<br>Release samples                          |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 BTB_fast-rep_150_dyn (160/170/180/190)</b>   | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Fast repetitions: Dynamics, 150–190 BPM<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                   |                |

**13 UPBEAT REPETITION**

Repetitions

**Level 2:** 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM**A Single Upbeat**

Range: C1–E4

**01 BTB\_UB-a1\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)**

Samples: 111

RAM: 6 MB

**Level 2**

1 upbeat, 80–150 BPM

3 velocity layers

**B Double Upbeats**

Range: C1–E4

**01 BTB\_UB-a2\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)**

Samples: 111

RAM: 6 MB

**Level 2**

2 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

3 velocity layers

**C Triple Upbeats**

Range: C1–E4

**01 BTB\_UB-a3\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)**

Samples: 111

RAM: 6 MB

**Level 2**

3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

3 velocity layers

**14 GRACE NOTES**

Range: C1–E4



Phrases

**Level 2:** Grace notes

Minor and major 2nd

Up and down

Mapped to target note

**01 BTB\_grace-1**

Samples: 329

RAM: 20 MB

**Level 2**

Grace notes, minor 2nd

3 velocity layers

Release samples

AB switch: up/down

**02 BTB\_grace-2**

Samples: 327

RAM: 20 MB

**Level 2**

Grace notes, major 2nd

3 velocity layers

Release samples

AB switch: up/down

**98 RESOURCES**

Resources

**Level 2:** Isolated dynamics repetitions: Portato, staccato  
Single layer long notes

| <b>01 Perf Rep dyn</b>   |  | <b>Range: C1–E4</b> |                  |                |
|--|--|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 BTB_rep_cre9_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>                                   |  | <b>Samples: 19</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Portato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer   |  |                     |                  |                |
| <b>01 BTB_rep_dim9_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>                                   |  | <b>Samples: 19</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Portato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer  |  |                     |                  |                |
| <b>02 BTB_rep_cre9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>                                   |  | <b>Samples: 19</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Staccato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer  |  |                     |                  |                |
| <b>02 BTB_rep_dim9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b>                                   |  | <b>Samples: 19</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Staccato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note<br>1 velocity layer |  |                     |                  |                |
| <b>02 Long Notes - Single Layer</b>  |  | <b>Range: C1–E4</b> |                  |                |
| <b>01 BTB_sus_p</b>  |  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, piano<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples                          |  |                     |                  |                |
| <b>02 BTB_sus_mp</b>   |  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, mezzopiano<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples                     |  |                     |                  |                |
| <b>03 BTB_sus_mf</b>   |  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, mezzoforte<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples                     |  |                     |                  |                |
| <b>04 BTB_sus_f</b>  |  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, forte<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples                          |  |                     |                  |                |
| <b>05 BTB_sus_ff</b>   |  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, fortissimo<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples                     |  |                     |                  |                |

---

**03 Perf Speed variation****Range: C1–E4**

---

**01 BTB\_perf-legato\_slow****Samples: 929****RAM: 58 MB****Level 1**

Interval performances

Legato, slow

2 velocity layers

Release samples

---

**99 RELEASE**

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

## Matrices

### Matrix - LEVEL 1

#### L1 BTB Articulation Combi

Samples: 1493 RAM: 93 MB [Level 1](#)

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato medium, sustained with and without vibrato, medium crescendo and diminuendo 2 and 4 sec., fortepiano and sforzato, flutter tonguing normal and crescendo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C6           | C#6          | D6           | D#6 | E6            |
|----|--------------|--------------|--------------|-----|---------------|
| V1 | staccato     | sus. vib.    | dyn.med. 2s. | fp  | flutter       |
| V2 | port. medium | sus. no vib. | dyn.med. 4s. | sfz | flutter cres. |

#### L1 BTB Perf-Legato Speed

Samples: 1219 RAM: 76 MB [Level 1](#)

Interval performances

Legato slow, normal, and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1   | H2     | H3   |
|--------|------|--------|------|
| legato | slow | normal | fast |

#### L1 BTB Perf-Repetitions Combi

Samples: 1025 RAM: 64 MB [Level 1](#)

Repetition performances

Portato

Staccato fast

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | repetitions   |
|----|---------------|
| V1 | portato       |
| V2 | staccato fast |

### Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced

#### 01 BTB Perf-Universal

Samples: 1933 RAM: 120 MB [Level 2](#)

Interval performances

Legato slow, normal and fast

Marcato

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|         | H1   | H2     | H3   |
|---------|------|--------|------|
| legato  | slow | normal | fast |
| marcato | %    | %      | %    |

**02 BTB Short+Long notes****Samples: 1590 RAM: 99 MB Level 2**

Single notes

Staccato, portato short and medium, portato long and sustained with and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C6       | C#6         | D6        | D#6               | E6           |
|----|----------|-------------|-----------|-------------------|--------------|
| V1 | staccato | port. short | port.med. | port.long vib.    | sus. vib.    |
| V2 | staccato | port.short  | port.med. | port.long no vib. | sus. no vib. |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard****11 BTB Perf-Legato Speed****Samples: 1219 RAM: 76 MB Level 2**

Interval performances

Legato slow, normal, and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1   | H2     | H3   |
|--------|------|--------|------|
| legato | slow | normal | fast |

**12 BTB Short notes****Samples: 662 RAM: 41 MB Level 2**

Single notes

Staccato, portato short and medium, portato long with and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6

|    | C6       | C#6        | D6        | D#6            | E6                |
|----|----------|------------|-----------|----------------|-------------------|
| V1 | staccato | port.short | port.med. | port.long vib. | port.long no vib. |

**13 BTB Long notes - All****Samples: 407 RAM: 25 MB Level 2**

Single notes

Sustained with and without vibrato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–C#6

|           | C6      | C#6        |
|-----------|---------|------------|
| sustained | vibrato | no vibrato |

**14 BTB Dynamics - Small****Samples: 555 RAM: 34 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|            | C6     | C#6    | D6     |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.medium | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. |
| fp         | %      | %      | %      |
| sfz        | %      | %      | %      |
| sffz       | %      | %      | %      |

**15 BTB Dynamics - Large****Samples: 1526 RAM: 95 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5 and 2 sec.

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzattissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|             | C6       | C#6    | D6     |
|-------------|----------|--------|--------|
| dyn.light   | 1.5 sec. | 2 sec. | 2 sec. |
| dyn.medium  | 2 sec.   | 3 sec. | 4 sec. |
| dyn.strong  | 4 sec.   | 4 sec. | 6 sec. |
| fp/sfz/sffz | fp       | sfz    | sffz   |

**16 BTB Flutter****Samples: 125 RAM: 7 MB Level 2**

Flutter tonguing

Normal, crescendo, and normal/crescendo with Cell crossfading

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6

|         | C6     | C#6       | D6      |
|---------|--------|-----------|---------|
| flutter | normal | crescendo | Cell XF |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 BTB Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 1538 RAM: 96 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Portato, and staccato slow and fast

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6

|    | C6      | C#6           | D6            |
|----|---------|---------------|---------------|
| V1 | portato | staccato slow | staccato fast |

**32 BTB Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 1538 RAM: 96 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Portato, and staccato slow and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|    | H1      | H2            | H3            |
|----|---------|---------------|---------------|
| V1 | portato | staccato slow | staccato fast |

**33 BTB Fast-Repetitions****Samples: 666 RAM: 41 MB Level 2**

Fast repetitions: Staccato, 9 repetitions, 150–190 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6

|           | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 150 | 160 | 170 | 180 | 190 |

**34 BTB Upbeats a1****Samples: 888 RAM: 55 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**35 BTB Upbeats a2****Samples: 888 RAM: 55 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**36 BTB Upbeats a3****Samples: 888 RAM: 55 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**37 BTB Upbeats all****Samples: 2664 RAM: 166 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |
| 2 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |
| 3 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase****41 BTB\_Grace notes - All****Samples: 545 RAM: 34 MB Level 2**

Grace notes, minor and major 2nd

AB switch up/down

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–C#6

|          | C6       | C#6      |
|----------|----------|----------|
| interval | min. 2nd | maj. 2nd |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel****71 BTB Portato - cre9****Samples: 171 RAM: 10 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G#6

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  | G#6 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**72 BTB Staccato - cre9****Samples: 171 RAM: 10 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G#6

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  | G#6 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**73 BTB Combi - cre9****Samples: 342 RAM: 21 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G#6 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  | G#6 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**74 BTB Portato - dim9****Samples: 171 RAM: 10 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G#6

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  | G#6 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**75 BTB Staccato - dim9****Samples: 171 RAM: 10 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G#6

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  | G#6 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**76 BTB Combi - dim9****Samples: 342 RAM: 21 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G#6 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  | G#6 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**Presets****BTB VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 3552 RAM: 222 MB Level 1**

L1 BTB Perf-Legato Speed

L1 BTB Articulation Combi

L1 BTB Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C7–D7**BTB VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 5094 RAM: 318 MB Level 2**

01 BTB Perf-Universal

01 BTB Perf-Universal

L1 BTB Articulation Combi

31 BTB Perf-Repetitions - Combi

73 BTB Combi - cre9

**Preset keyswitches:** C7–E7

## 58 Contrabass trombone

### Description

The contrabass trombone was created to provide sufficient volume for a stable and supportive foundation to the four-part trombone section while blending with its homogeneous overall sound, which was something the tuba could not do. It is used principally for the great octave and the contraoctave.

### Range and notation

The contrabass trombone has a range of Ab<sub>0</sub>–C<sub>5</sub>. Music for the contrabass trombone is written in bass clef with no transposition. The notation in the upper register is in tenor clef.

### Sound characteristics

Hard, metallic, penetrating, powerful, dark, taut, intense, dramatic, heroic, eruptive.

It sounds more intense than the bass trombone. Compared to the tuba the contrabass trombone sounds far more concise, definite and metallic. The sound has a dark and metallic timbre and ranges from a melodious and subdued piano to massive explosions. It is the notes of the low register that are most often used in the orchestra. The upper register (C#<sub>4</sub>–C<sub>5</sub>) corresponds to the tenor trombone's pitch. At this pitch the contrabass trombone is more powerful.

### Combination with other instruments

The instrument plays the deepest part (4th trombone) in the four-part trombone section, making it possible in orchestral writing to write for a four-part trombone section and include lower pitches. Functions include fundamental bass, thematic tasks, doubling an octave below.

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: A0–D4



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato medium

Sustained

**Level 2:** Portato medium, marcato

Portato long

### 01 CTB\_staccato

Samples: 234

RAM: 14 MB

**Level 1**

Staccato

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

### 02 CTB\_portato\_medium

Samples: 240

RAM: 15 MB

**Level 1**

Portato, short medium

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

### 03 CTB\_portato\_medium\_marc

Samples: 156

RAM: 9 MB

**Level 2**

Portato, medium, marcato

2 velocity layers

4 Alternations

### 04 CTB\_portato\_long

Samples: 238

RAM: 14 MB

**Level 2**

Portato, long

3 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

### 11 CTB\_sus

Samples: 238

RAM: 14 MB

**Level 1**

Sustained

3 velocity layers

Release samples

### 02 DYNAMICS

Range: A#0–D4



Dynamics

**Level 1:** Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato

**Level 2:** Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, and 2 sec.

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3 and 4 sec.

Sforzatissimo

|  |                     |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 CTB_dyn-li_1s</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1 sec.<br>3 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>02 CTB_dyn-li_1'5s</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5 sec.<br>3 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>03 CTB_dyn-li_2s</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Light crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>3 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 CTB_dyn-me_3s</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>12 CTB_dyn-me_4s</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>13 CTB_dyn-me_6s</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>21 CTB_dyn-str_3s</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>22 CTB_dyn-str_4s</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>31 CTB_pfp_4s</b>   | <b>Range: A0–D4</b> | <b>Samples: 37</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer   |                     |                     |                   |                |
| <b>32 CTB_pfp_6s</b>   | <b>Range: A0–D4</b> | <b>Samples: 37</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b>  | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Crescendo-diminuendo, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer   |                     |                     |                   |                |

|   |                      |                    |                  |   |
|---|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|---|
| <b>41 CTB_fp</b>  | <b>Range: A0–D4</b>  | <b>Samples: 39</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Fortepiano<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations  |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>42 CTB_sfz</b>   | <b>Range: A0–D4</b>  | <b>Samples: 39</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Sforzato<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations  |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>43 CTB_sffz</b>  | <b>Range: A0–D4</b>  | <b>Samples: 39</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Sforzatisimo<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations  |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>03 FLATTER + FX</b>  |                      |                    |                  |  |
| Flutter tonguing and effects<br><b>Level 1:</b> Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo<br><b>Level 2:</b> Arpeggios, up/down and down/up<br>Duphonic playing, var. A and B |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>01 CTB_flutter</b>   | <b>Range: A1–C5</b>  | <b>Samples: 70</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Flutter tonguing<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples   |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>02 CTB_flutter_cre</b>   | <b>Range: A1–C5</b>  | <b>Samples: 35</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Flutter tonguing, crescendo<br>1 velocity layer   |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>11 CTB_arpeggio</b>  | <b>Range: F2–F3</b>  | <b>Samples: 24</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Effects: Arpeggios, up/down and down/up<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down   |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>12 CTB_duophonic-A</b>   | <b>Range: C2–G#3</b> | <b>Samples: 19</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Effects: Duophonic playing (tone and voice), variant A<br>1 velocity layer  |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>13 CTB_duophonic-B</b>   | <b>Range: C2–C3</b>  | <b>Samples: 11</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Effects: Duophonic playing, variant B<br>1 velocity layer   |                      |                    |                  |   |

**10 PERF INTERVAL**

Range: A0–C4

Interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato**Level 2:** Legato with sustain crossfading

Marcato

**01 CTB\_perf-legato**

Samples: 951

RAM: 59 MB

**Level 1**

Legato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 CTB\_perf-legato\_sus**

Samples: 972

RAM: 60 MB

**Level 2**

Legato

Sustain crossfading

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**03 CTB\_perf-marcato**

Samples: 974

RAM: 60 MB

**Level 2**

Marcato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**11 PERF REPETITION**

Repetition performances

**Level 1:** Portato slow

Staccato

**Level 2:** Portato fast

Dynamics, portato slow and fast

**01 CTB\_perf-rep\_por-sl**

Range: A0–D4

Samples: 342

RAM: 21 MB

**Level 1**

Repetition performances: Portato, slow

2 velocity layers

**02 CTB\_perf-rep\_por-fa**

Range: C1–D4

Samples: 306

RAM: 19 MB

**Level 2**

Repetition performances: Portato, fast

2 velocity layers

**03 CTB\_perf-rep\_sta**

Range: A1–D4

Samples: 234

RAM: 14 MB

**Level 1**

Repetition performances: Staccato

2 velocity layers

**11 CTB\_perf-rep\_dyn5\_por-sl**

Range: C1–D4

Samples: 170

RAM: 10 MB

**Level 2**

Repetition performances: Portato dynamics, slow, 5 repetitions

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**12 CTB\_perf-rep\_dyn5\_por-fa**      **Range: C1–D4**      **Samples: 170**      **RAM: 10 MB**      **Level 2**

Repetition performances: Portato dynamics, fast, 5 repetitions

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

## 12 UPBEAT REPETITION

Repetitions

**Level 2:** 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

### A Single Upbeat



**01 CTB\_UB-a1\_80 (90/100)**      **Range: A1–D4**      **Samples: 50**      **RAM: 3 MB**      **Level 2**

1 upbeat, 80–100 BPM

2 velocity layers

**04 CTB\_UB-a1\_110 (120/130/140/150)**      **Range: A0–D4**      **Samples: 74**      **RAM: 4 MB**      **Level 2**

1 upbeat, 110–150 BPM

2 velocity layers

### B Double Upbeats

**Range: A0–D4**



**01 CTB\_UB-a2\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)**      **Samples: 74**      **RAM: 4 MB**      **Level 2**

2 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

2 velocity layers

### C Triple Upbeats

**Range: A0–D4**



**01 CTB\_UB-a3\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)**      **Samples: 74**      **RAM: 4 MB**      **Level 2**

3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

2 velocity layers

## 13 GLISSANDI

Interval performances/Phrases

**Level 2:** Performance glissandos, minor 2nd to major 3rd

Fixed glissandos, minor 2nd to 4th, up and down

Please note that fixed glissandos have different up and down ranges.



**01 CTB\_perf-gliss**      **Range: A0–G3**      **Samples: 450**      **RAM: 28 MB**      **Level 2**

Glissando, minor 2nd to major 3rd

1 velocity layer

Release samples

|  |                      |                    |                  |                |
|--|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>11 CTB_gliss-1</b>  | <b>Range: A0–D#3</b> | <b>Samples: 54</b> | <b>RAM: 3 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, minor 2nd<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down |                      |                    |                  |                |
| <b>12 CTB_gliss-2</b>  | <b>Range: A0–E3</b>  | <b>Samples: 46</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, major 2nd<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down |                      |                    |                  |                |
| <b>13 CTB_gliss-3</b>  | <b>Range: A0–E3</b>  | <b>Samples: 30</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, minor 3rd<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down |                      |                    |                  |                |
| <b>14 CTB_gliss-4</b>  | <b>Range: A0–F#3</b> | <b>Samples: 14</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, major 3rd<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down |                      |                    |                  |                |
| <b>15 CTB_gliss-5</b>  | <b>Range: A2–G3</b>  | <b>Samples: 2</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Glissando, 4th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down       |                      |                    |                  |                |

## 98 RESOURCES

Resources

**Level 2:** Isolated dynamics repetitions: Portato

Single layer long notes

|   |                     |                    |                  |                |
|---|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 Perf Rep dyn</b>  | <b>Range: C1–D4</b> |                    |                  |                |
| <b>01 CTB_rep_cre5_por-1 (2/3/4/59)</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 17</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Portato, crescendo, 1st to 5th note<br>1 velocity layer  |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>01 CTB_rep_dim5_por-1 (2/3/4/59)</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 17</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Extracted repetitions: Portato, diminuendo, 1st to 5th note<br>1 velocity layer |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>02 Long Notes - Single Layer</b>   | <b>Range: A0–D4</b> |                    |                  |                |
| <b>01 CTB_sus_p</b>   |                     | <b>Samples: 79</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, piano<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples                         |                     |                    |                  |                |
| <b>02 CTB_sus_mf</b>  |                     | <b>Samples: 79</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sustained, mezzoforte   |                     |                    |                  |                |

1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

**03 CTB\_sus\_f****Samples: 80****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Sustained, forte  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

**99 RELEASE**

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

## Matrices

### Matrix - LEVEL 1

#### L1 CTB Articulation Combi

Samples: 969 RAM: 60 MB [Level 1](#)

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato medium, sustained, crescendo-diminuendo 4 and 6 sec., fortepiano and sforzato, flutter tonguing normal and crescendo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C6           | C#6       | D6      | D#6 | E6            |
|----|--------------|-----------|---------|-----|---------------|
| V1 | staccato     | sustained | pfp 4s. | fp  | flutter       |
| V2 | port. medium | sustained | pfp 6s. | sfz | flutter cres. |

#### L1 CTB Perf-Legato Speed

Samples: 972 RAM: 60 MB [Level 1](#)

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading and normal

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|        | H1     | H2     |
|--------|--------|--------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal |

#### L1 CTB Perf-Repetitions Combi

Samples: 648 RAM: 40 MB [Level 1](#)

Repetition performances

Portato slow and fast

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | repetitions  |
|----|--------------|
| V1 | portato slow |
| V2 | portato fast |

### Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced

#### 01 CTB Perf-Universal

Samples: 1827 RAM: 114 MB [Level 2](#)

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading and normal

Marcato

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2     |
|---------|--------|--------|
| legato  | sus-XF | normal |
| marcato | %      | %      |

**02 CTB Short+Long notes - All****Samples: 985 RAM: 61 MB Level 2**

Single notes

Staccato, portato medium normal and marcato, portato long, and sustained

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6

|    | C6       | C#6              | D6                | D#6       | E6        |
|----|----------|------------------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|
| V1 | staccato | port.med. normal | port.med. marcato | port.long | sustained |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard****11 CTB Perf-Legato Speed****Samples: 972 RAM: 60 MB Level 2**

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading and normal

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|        | H1     | H2     |
|--------|--------|--------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal |

**12 CTB Dynamics - Small****Samples: 339 RAM: 21 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzattissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|            | C6     | C#6    | D6     |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.medium | 3 sec. | 4 sec. | 6 sec. |
| fp         | %      | %      | %      |
| sfz        | %      | %      | %      |
| sffz       | %      | %      | %      |

**13 CTB Dynamics - Large****Samples: 1227 RAM: 76 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, and 2 sec.

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3 and 4 sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzattissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6 Vertical: Modwheel, 5 zones

|             | C6     | C#6      | D6     |
|-------------|--------|----------|--------|
| dyn.light   | 1 sec. | 1.5 sec. | 2 sec. |
| dyn.medium  | 3 sec. | 4 sec.   | 6 sec. |
| dyn.strong  | 3 sec. | 4 sec.   | 4 sec. |
| ppf         | 4 sec. | 4 sec.   | 6 sec. |
| fp/sfz/sffz | fp     | sfz      | sffz   |

**14 CTB Flatter****Samples: 105 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Flutter tonguing

Normal, crescendo, and normal/crescendo with Cell crossfading

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6

|         | C6     | C#6       | D6      |
|---------|--------|-----------|---------|
| flutter | normal | crescendo | Cell XF |

**15 CTB FX****Samples: 54****RAM: 3 MB****Level 2**

Effects: Arpeggios, duophonic playing (voice and tone) variation A and B

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6

|    | C6       | C#6         | D6          |
|----|----------|-------------|-------------|
| V1 | arpeggio | duophonic-A | duophonic-B |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 CTB Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 882****RAM: 55 MB****Level 2**

Repetition performances

Portato slow and fast, and staccato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6

|    | C6           | C#6          | D6       |
|----|--------------|--------------|----------|
| V1 | portato slow | portato fast | staccato |

**32 CTB Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 882****RAM: 55 MB****Level 2**

Repetition performances

Portato slow and fast, and staccato

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|    | H1           | H2           | H3       |
|----|--------------|--------------|----------|
| V1 | portato slow | portato fast | staccato |

**33 BTB Upbeats a1****Samples: 520****RAM: 32 MB****Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**34 CTB Upbeats a2****Samples: 592****RAM: 37 MB****Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**35 CTB Upbeats a3****Samples: 592****RAM: 37 MB****Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**36 CTB Upbeats all****Samples: 1704****RAM: 106 MB****Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6      Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |
| 2 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |
| 3 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel****71 CTB Portato - cre5****Samples: 115 RAM: 7 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**72 CTB Portato - dim5****Samples: 115 RAM: 7 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**Presets****CTB VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 2431 RAM: 151 MB Level 1**

L1 CTB Perf-Legato Speed  
 L1 CTB Articulation Combi  
 L1 CTB Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C7–D7**CTB VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 3566 RAM: 222 MB Level 2**

01 CTB Perf-Universal  
 01 CTB Perf-Universal  
 L1 CTB Articulation Combi  
 31 CTB Perf-Repetitions - Combi  
 71 CTB Portato - cre5

**Preset keyswitches:** C7–E7

# 60 Contrabass tuba

## Description

The contrabass tuba is currently made in two tunings: C and Bb. It is used primarily in opera orchestras and in brass and military bands. It is rarely asked for in symphony orchestras.

In some regions of Germany and in Scandinavia, the United Kingdom and the USA, where the bass tuba (in F or Eb) is not in use, the contrabass tuba in C with four valves is common as a kind of all-round instrument: it is played not only in the orchestra but also in chamber music and as a solo instrument.

## Range and notation

The contrabass tuba has a range of A0–B3. Music for the bass and contrabass tubas is generally non-transposing and written in bass clef. The instrument is pitched in the contrabass register.

## Sound characteristics

Round, calm, hearty, loud, robust, ponderous, sustaining, soothing, earthy, sonorous, majestic, cavernous, rumbling, unfathomable, grave, weighty, broad, resonant.

In all registers the tone is richer, rounder and darker than the bass tuba and less metallic than the bass and contrabass trombones. The actual pitch of the lowest notes is hard to detect. Below F2 the tone is the typical contrabass tuba sound, above it it sounds like a tuba in F.

## Combination with other instruments

The contrabass tuba is a contrabass instrument. One of its principal tasks is the doubling of other bass instruments, usually an octave lower. Especially in tutti passages its role is to provide a firm fundamental bass. In especially large brass sections, for example with six or eight horns, two tubas are used, either two bass tubas or a bass and a contrabass tuba.

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: A0–C4



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato medium

Sustained

**Level 2:** Portato medium, soft and hard attack

Portato long, soft and hard attack

### 01 CTU\_staccato

Samples: 282

RAM: 17 MB

Level 1

Staccato

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

### 02 CTU\_portato\_medium

Samples: 276

RAM: 17 MB

Level 1

Portato, medium

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

### 03 CTU\_portato\_medium\_soft

Samples: 142

RAM: 8 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, soft attack

4 velocity layers

2 Alternations

### 04 CTU\_portato\_medium\_hard

Samples: 222

RAM: 13 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium, hard attack

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

### 05 CTU\_portato\_long\_soft

Samples: 259

RAM: 16 MB

Level 2

Portato, long, soft attack

4 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

### 06 CTU\_portato\_long\_hard

Samples: 220

RAM: 13 MB

Level 2

Portato, long, hard attack

3 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

### 11 CTU\_sus

Samples: 222

RAM: 13 MB

Level 1

Sustained

3 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 DYNAMICS****Range: A0–C4**

Dynamics

**Level 1:** Fortepiano, sforzato**Level 2:** Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 5 sec.

Sforzatissimo

|   |                     |                  |                |
|---|---------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 CTU_dyn-me_1s</b>   | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                  |                |
| <b>02 CTU_dyn-me_1'5s</b>   | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                  |                |
| <b>03 CTU_dyn-me_2s</b>   | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                  |                |
| <b>04 CTU_dyn-me_3s</b>   | <b>Samples: 144</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                  |                |
| <b>05 CTU_dyn-me_4s</b>   | <b>Samples: 144</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                  |                |
| <b>06 CTU_dyn-me_6s</b>   | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 6 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo    |                     |                  |                |
| <b>11 CTU_dyn-str_3s</b>  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo    |                     |                  |                |
| <b>12 CTU_dyn-str_4s</b>  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo    |                     |                  |                |

|  |                     |                  |   |
|--|---------------------|------------------|---|
| <b>13 CTU_dyn-str_5s</b>   | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 5 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                  |   |
| <b>21 CTU_fp</b>   | <b>Samples: 37</b>  | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Fortepiano<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations   |                     |                  |   |
| <b>22 CTU_sfz</b>  | <b>Samples: 30</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Sforzato<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations   |                     |                  |   |
| <b>23 CTU_sffz</b>   | <b>Samples: 30</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Sforzatisimo<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations   |                     |                  |   |
| <b>03 FLATTER + TRILLS</b>   |                     |                  |  |
| <b>Range: C1–C4</b>  |                     |                  |   |
| Flutter tonguing and trills<br><b>Level 1:</b> Flutter tonguing<br>Trills, minor and major 2nd |                     |                  |   |
| <b>01 CTU_flatter</b>  | <b>Samples: 64</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Flutter tonguing<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples  |                     |                  |   |
| <b>11 CTU_trill_1</b>  | <b>Samples: 126</b> | <b>RAM: 7 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Trills, minor 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples                                      |                     |                  |   |
| <b>12 CTU_trill_2</b>  | <b>Samples: 126</b> | <b>RAM: 7 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Trills, major 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples                                      |                     |                  |   |

**04 MUTE BASIC**

Range: A0–C4

Muted notes

**Level 2:** Portato medium and long

Sustained

Crescendo and diminuendo, 3 and 4 sec.

Sforzato

Flutter tonguing, crescendo

**01 CTU\_mu\_portato\_medium** **Samples: 218** **RAM: 13 MB** **Level 2**

Portato, medium

3 velocity layers

4 Alternations

**02 CTU\_mu\_portato\_long** **Samples: 180** **RAM: 11 MB** **Level 2**

Portato, long

3 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

**03 CTU\_mu\_sus** **Samples: 148** **RAM: 9 MB** **Level 2**

Sustained

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**11 CTU\_mu\_dyn\_3s** **Samples: 74** **RAM: 4 MB** **Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**12 CTU\_mu\_dyn\_4s** **Samples: 74** **RAM: 4 MB** **Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**13 CTU\_mu\_sfz** **Samples: 37** **RAM: 2 MB** **Level 2**

Sforzato

1 velocity layer

2 Alternations

**21 CTU\_mu\_flutter-cre** **Range: D1–C4** **Samples: 30** **RAM: 1 MB** **Level 2**

Flutter tonguing, crescendo

1 velocity layer

**10 PERF INTERVAL**

Range: A0–C4



Interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato**Level 2:** Legato with sustain crossfading

Marcato

**01 CTU\_perf-legato**

Samples: 877

RAM: 54 MB

**Level 1**

Legato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 CTU\_perf-legato\_sus**

Samples: 803

RAM: 50 MB

**Level 2**

Legato

Sustain crossfading

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**03 CTU\_perf-marcato**

Samples: 966

RAM: 60 MB

**Level 2**

Marcato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**11 PERF INTERVAL FAST**

Range: A0–C4



Fast interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato**Level 2:** Marcato**01 CTU\_perf-legato\_fa**

Samples: 945

RAM: 59 MB

**Level 1**

Legato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 CTU\_perf-marcato\_fa**

Samples: 1034

RAM: 64 MB

**Level 2**

Marcato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**12 PERF TRILL**

Range: A0–C4



Multi interval performances

**Level 2:** Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd**01 CTU\_perf-trill**

Samples: 1549

RAM: 96 MB

**Level 2**

Performance trills, legato, minor to major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**13 PERF REPETITION**

Range: A#0–C4



Repetition performances

**Level 1:** Portato slow, staccato fast**Level 2:** Portato fast, staccato slow**01 CTU\_perf-rep\_por-sl**

Range: A0–C4

Samples: 335

RAM: 20 MB

**Level 1**Repetition performances: Portato, slow  
2 velocity layers**02 CTU\_perf-rep\_por-fa**

Samples: 306

RAM: 19 MB

**Level 2**Repetition performances: Portato, fast  
2 velocity layers**03 CTU\_perf-rep\_sta-sl**

Samples: 306

RAM: 19 MB

**Level 2**Repetition performances: Staccato, slow  
2 velocity layers**04 CTU\_perf-rep\_sta-fa**

Samples: 306

RAM: 19 MB

**Level 1**Repetition performances: Staccato, fast  
2 velocity layers**14 UPBEAT REPETITION**

Repetitions

**Level 2:** 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM**A Single Upbeat****01 CTU\_UB-a1\_80 (90/100)**

Range: A0–A3

Samples: 66

RAM: 4 MB

**Level 2**1 upbeat, 80–100 BPM  
2 velocity layers**04 CTU\_UB-a1\_110 (120/130/140/150)**

Range: A#0–A#3

Samples: 64

RAM: 4 MB

**Level 2**1 upbeat, 110–150 BPM  
2 velocity layers**B Double Upbeats**

Range: A#0–A#3

**01 CTU\_UB-a2\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)**

Samples: 74

RAM: 4 MB

**Level 2**2 upbeats, 80–150 BPM  
2 velocity layers

**C Triple Upbeats**

Range: A#0–A#3

**01 CTU\_UB-a3\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)**

Samples: 64

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM  
2 velocity layers

**15 GRACE NOTES**

Range: A0–C4



Phrases

**Level 2:** Grace notes

Minor and major 2nd

Up and down

Mapped to target note

**01 CTU\_grace-1**

Samples: 222

RAM: 13 MB

Level 2

Grace notes, minor 2nd  
2 velocity layers  
Release samples  
AB switch: up/down

**02 CTU\_grace-2**

Samples: 222

RAM: 13 MB

Level 2

Grace notes, major 2nd  
2 velocity layers  
Release samples  
AB switch: up/down

**98 RESOURCES**

Resources

**Level 2:** Single layer long notes**02 Long Notes - Single Layer**

Range: A0–C4

**01 CTU\_sus\_p**

Samples: 74

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

Sustained, piano  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

**02 CTU\_sus\_mf**

Samples: 74

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

Sustained, mezzoforte  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

**03 CTU\_sus\_f**

Samples: 74

RAM: 4 MB

Level 2

Sustained, forte  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

**99 RELEASE**

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

**Matrices****Matrix - LEVEL 1****L1 CTU Articulation Combi****Samples: 1455 RAM: 90 MB [Level 1](#)**

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato medium, sustained, crescendo and diminuendo 2 and 4 sec., fortissimo and sforzato, flutter tonguing, and half and whole tone trills

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C6           | C#6       | D6           | D#6 | E6      | F6          |
|----|--------------|-----------|--------------|-----|---------|-------------|
| V1 | staccato     | sustained | dynamics 2s. | fp  | flutter | trill half  |
| V2 | port. medium | sustained | dynamics 4s. | sfz | flutter | trill whole |

**L1 CTU Perf-Legato Speed****Samples: 1089 RAM: 68 MB [Level 1](#)**

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading, normal, and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1     | H2     | H3   |
|--------|--------|--------|------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal | fast |

**L1 CTU Perf-Repetitions Combi****Samples: 641 RAM: 40 MB [Level 1](#)**

Repetition performances

Portato slow

Staccato fast

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | repetitions   |
|----|---------------|
| V1 | portato slow  |
| V2 | staccato fast |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced****01 CTU Perf-Universal****Samples: 2193 RAM: 137 MB [Level 2](#)**

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading, normal, and fast

Marcato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2     | H3   |
|---------|--------|--------|------|
| legato  | sus-XF | normal | fast |
| marcato | normal | normal | fast |

**02 CTU Perf-Trill Speed****Samples: 1693 RAM: 105 MB Level 2**

Multi interval performances  
 Legato and trills  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|    | H1     | H2     |
|----|--------|--------|
| V1 | legato | trills |

**03 CTU Short+Long notes****Samples: 928 RAM: 58 MB Level 2**

Single notes  
 Staccato, portato medium, portato long with soft attack, and sustained

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D#6

|    | C6       | C#6        | D6             | D#6       |
|----|----------|------------|----------------|-----------|
| V1 | staccato | port. med. | port.long soft | sustained |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard****11 CTU Perf-Legato Speed****Samples: 1089 RAM: 68 MB Level 2**

Interval performances  
 Legato with sustain crossfading, normal, and fast  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1     | H2     | H3   |
|--------|--------|--------|------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal | fast |

**12 CTU Perf-Marcato Speed****Samples: 1178 RAM: 73 MB Level 2**

Interval performances<sup>m</sup>Marcato normal and fast  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2   |
|---------|--------|------|
| marcato | normal | fast |

**13 CTU Dynamics - Small****Samples: 533 RAM: 33 MB Level 2**

Dynamics  
 Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.  
 Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzatisimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|            | C6     | C#6    | D6     |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.medium | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. |
| fp         | %      | %      | %      |
| sfz        | %      | %      | %      |
| sffz       | %      | %      | %      |

**14 CTU Dynamics - Large****Samples: 1125 RAM: 70 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4 and 5 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzattissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|             | C6     | C#6      | D6     |
|-------------|--------|----------|--------|
| dyn.medium  | 1 sec. | 1.5 sec. | 2 sec. |
| dyn.medium  | 3 sec. | 4 sec.   | 6 sec. |
| dyn.strong  | 3 sec. | 4 sec.   | 5 sec. |
| fp/sfz/sffz | fp     | sfz      | sffz   |

**15 CTU Flatter****Samples: 64 RAM: 4 MB Level 2**

Single notes: Flutter tonguing

**16 CTU Trills - normal****Samples: 252 RAM: 15 MB Level 2**

Trills, minor and major 2nd

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C1       |
|----|----------|
| V1 | min. 2nd |
| V2 | maj. 2nd |

**17 CTU Mute Short+Long****Samples: 502 RAM: 31 MB Level 2**

Muted tones

Portato medium and long, sustained, and crescendo flutter tonguing

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D#6

|    | C6         | C#6        | D6        | D#6           |
|----|------------|------------|-----------|---------------|
| V1 | port. med. | port. long | sustained | flutter cres. |

**18 CTU Mute Dynamics****Samples: 185 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Crescendo and diminuendo, 3 and 4 sec.

Sforzato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–C#6 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C6     | C#6    |
|----------|--------|--------|
| Cres/dim | 3 sec. | 4 sec. |
| sforzato | %      | %      |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 CTU Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 1253 RAM: 78 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Portato slow and fast, staccato slow and fast

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D#6

|    | C6           | C#6          | D6            | D#6           |
|----|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| V1 | portato slow | portato fast | staccato slow | staccato fast |

**32 CTU Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 918 RAM: 57 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Portato fast, staccato slow and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|    | H1           | H2            | H3            |
|----|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| V1 | portato fast | staccato slow | staccato fast |

**33 CTU Upbeats a1****Samples: 518 RAM: 32 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**34 CTU Upbeats a2****Samples: 542 RAM: 33 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**35 CTU Upbeats a3****Samples: 512 RAM: 32 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**36 CTU Upbeats all****Samples: 1572 RAM: 98 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |
| 2 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |
| 3 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase****41 CTU Grace notes - All****Samples: 370 RAM: 23 MB Level 2**

Grace notes, minor and major 2nd

AB switch up/down

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–C#6

|          | C6       | C#6      |
|----------|----------|----------|
| interval | min. 2nd | maj. 2nd |

## Presets

---

**CTU VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 3037 RAM: 189 MB [Level 1](#)**

L1 CTU Perf-Legato Speed  
L1 CTU Articulation Combi  
L1 CTU Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C7–D7

---

**CTU VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 5569 RAM: 348 MB [Level 2](#)**

01 CTU Perf-Universal  
02 CTU Perf-Trill Speed  
L1 CTU Articulation Combi  
31 CTU Perf-Repetitions - Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C7–D#7

# 61 Wagner tuba

## Description

The Wagner tuba, conceived by Richard Wagner for his “Ring of the Nibelung”, is made in two sizes, Bb (tenor instrument) and F (bass instrument). In the symphony orchestra two of each instrument have always been used.

Although the instrument’s conical tubing means that it belongs to the bugle-horn family (tubas), its playing technique and sound characteristics place it among the horns. It is played by a hornist because it has a horn mouthpiece.

## Range and notation

The range of the tenor Wagner tuba in Bb is Eb1–Bb5. Notation is transposing, usually in bass and treble clef. It sounds a major second lower than written.

## Sound characteristics

Round, resounding, hearty, robust, sustaining, gentle, soft, war-like, menacing, sonorous, solemn, stately, heroic, substantial.

Overall the Wagner tuba’s timbre lies somewhere between the horn, the bass tuba and the trombone. Compared to the horn it sounds more somber and softer, has a less incisive attack. In comparison with the bass tuba it sounds thinner, edgier and more incisive, compared to the trombone milder, softer and darker.

## Combination with other instruments

The Wagner tuba is best suited for the evocation of solemn, stately and heroic moods and its timbre bridges the gap between the horns and the low brass as well as between the bass tuba and the trombones. It has enough volume to play themes on its own or an octave above with the bass tuba.

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: A#1–G5



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato short

Sustained

**Level 2:** Portato medium and long

#### 01 WTU\_staccato

Samples: 338

RAM: 21 MB

Level 1

Staccato

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 02 WTU\_portato\_short

Samples: 338

RAM: 21 MB

Level 1

Portato, short

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 03 WTU\_portato\_medium

Samples: 338

RAM: 21 MB

Level 2

Portato, medium

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

#### 04 WTU\_portato\_long

Samples: 344

RAM: 21 MB

Level 2

Portato, long

4 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

#### 11 WTU\_sus

Samples: 344

RAM: 21 MB

Level 1

Sustained

4 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 DYNAMICS****Range: A#1–G5**

Dynamics

**Level 1:** Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato

**Level 2:** Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Sforzatissimo

---

|                           |                     |                   |                |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_dyn-me_1'5s</b> | <b>Samples: 167</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                   |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_dyn-me_2s</b> | <b>Samples: 167</b> | <b>RAM: 10 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                   |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 WTU_dyn-me_3s</b> | <b>Samples: 176</b> | <b>RAM: 11 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                         |                     |                   |                |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 WTU_dyn-me_4s</b> | <b>Samples: 176</b> | <b>RAM: 11 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                          |                       |                    |                  |                |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>11 WTU_dyn-str_3s</b> | <b>Range: A#1–F#5</b> | <b>Samples: 88</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                          |                       |                    |                  |                |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>12 WTU_dyn-str_4s</b> | <b>Range: A#1–F#5</b> | <b>Samples: 88</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                          |                       |                    |                  |                |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>13 WTU_dyn-str_6s</b> | <b>Range: A#1–F#5</b> | <b>Samples: 88</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 6 sec.

1 velocity layer

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

---

|                      |                    |                  |                |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>21 WTU_pfp_4s</b> | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 sec.

1 velocity layer

---

|                      |                    |                  |                |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>22 WTU_pfp_6s</b> | <b>Samples: 23</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Crescendo-diminuendo, 6 sec.

1 velocity layer

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>31 WTU_fp</b>                                 | <b>Samples: 43</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Fortepiano<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations |                    |                  |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>32 WTU_sfz</b>                              | <b>Samples: 44</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Sforzato<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations |                    |                  |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>33 WTU_sffz</b>                                 | <b>Samples: 37</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sforzatisimo<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations |                    |                  |                |

|   |                      |   |
|---|----------------------|---|
| <b>03 FLATTER</b>                                     | <b>Range: A#1–G5</b> |  |
| <b>Level 1:</b> Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo |                      |   |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_flutter</b>                                   | <b>Samples: 86</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Flutter tonguing<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples |                    |                  |                |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 WTU_flutter_cre</b>                       | <b>Samples: 43</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Flutter tonguing, crescendo<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

|                         |                      |   |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---|
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b> | <b>Range: A#1–F5</b> |  |
| Interval performances   |                      |   |
| <b>Level 1:</b> Legato  |                      |   |
| <b>Level 2:</b> Marcato |                      |   |

|  |                      |                   |                |
|--|----------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_perf-legato</b>                      | <b>Samples: 1062</b> | <b>RAM: 66 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Legato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples |                      |                   |                |

|   |                      |                   |                |
|---|----------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 WTU_perf-marcato</b>                      | <b>Samples: 1142</b> | <b>RAM: 71 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Marcato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples |                      |                   |                |

**11 PERF INTERVAL FAST**

Range: A#1–F5



Fast interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato**Level 2:** Marcato**01 WTU\_perf-legato\_fa**

Samples: 1142 RAM: 71 MB

**Level 1**

Legato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 WTU\_perf-marcato\_fa**

Samples: 1222 RAM: 76 MB

**Level 2**

Marcato, fast

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**12 PERF TRILL**

Range: A#1–F5



Multi interval performances

**Level 2:** Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd**01 WTU\_perf-trill**

Samples: 1902 RAM: 118 MB

**Level 2**

Performance trills, legato, minor to major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

**13 PERF REPETITION**

Range: A#1–F5



Repetition performances

**Level 1:** Legato slow

Portato

Staccato slow

**Level 2:** Legato fast

Staccato fast

Dynamics for all repetitions

**01 WTU\_perf-rep\_leg-sl**

Samples: 220 RAM: 13 MB

**Level 1**

Repetition performances: Legato, slow

2 velocity layers

**02 WTU\_perf-rep\_leg-fa**

Samples: 215 RAM: 13 MB

**Level 2**

Repetition performances: Legato, fast

2 velocity layers

**03 WTU\_perf-rep\_por**

Samples: 396 RAM: 24 MB

**Level 1**

Repetition performances: Portato

2 velocity layers

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>04 WTU_perf-rep_sta-sl</b><br>Repetition performances: Staccato, slow<br>2 velocity layers  | <b>Samples: 396</b> | <b>RAM: 24 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| <b>05 WTU_perf-rep_sta-fa</b><br>Repetition performances: Staccato, fast<br>3 velocity layers  | <b>Samples: 594</b> | <b>RAM: 37 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>11 WTU_perf-rep_dyn5_leg-sl</b><br>Repetition performances: Legato dynamics, slow, 5 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   | <b>Samples: 220</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>12 WTU_perf-rep_dyn5_leg-fa</b><br>Repetition performances: Legato dynamics, fast, 5 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   | <b>Samples: 220</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>13 WTU_perf-rep_dyn9_por</b><br>Repetition performances: Portato dynamics, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo           | <b>Samples: 396</b> | <b>RAM: 24 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>14 WTU_perf-rep_dyn9_sta-sl</b><br>Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, slow, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo | <b>Samples: 396</b> | <b>RAM: 24 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>15 WTU_perf-rep_dyn9_sta-fa</b><br>Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, fast, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo | <b>Samples: 396</b> | <b>RAM: 24 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |

## 14 UPBEAT REPETITION

Upbeat repetitions

**Level 2:** 1 upbeat, 80–140, 160, and 180 BPM

2 and 3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

|                        |                       |   |
|------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| <b>A Single Upbeat</b> | <b>Range: A#1–F#5</b> |  |
|------------------------|-----------------------|---|

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_UB-a1_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160/180)</b><br>1 upbeat, 80–140, 160, and 180 BPM<br>3 velocity layers | <b>Samples: 66</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

|                         |                       |   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| <b>B Double Upbeats</b> | <b>Range: A#1–F#5</b> |  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---|

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_UB-a2_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)</b> | <b>Samples: 66</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

2 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM  
3 velocity layers

|                         |                       |   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---|
| <b>C Triple Upbeats</b> | <b>Range: A#1–F#5</b> |  |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|---|

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_UB-a3_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160/180/200)</b> | <b>Samples: 66</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

3 upbeats, 80–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM  
3 velocity layers

## 98 RESOURCES

Resources

**Level 2:** Isolated dynamics repetitions: Legato, portato, and staccato  
Single layer long notes

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>01 Perf Rep dyn</b> | <b>Range: A#1–F5</b> |
|------------------------|----------------------|

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_rep_cre5_leg-1 (2/3/4/5)</b> | <b>Samples: 22</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions  
Legato, crescendo, 1st to 5th note  
1 velocity layer

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 WTU_rep_dim5_leg-1 (2/3/4/5)</b> | <b>Samples: 22</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions  
Legato, diminuendo, 1st to 5th note  
1 velocity layer

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 WTU_rep_cre9_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b> | <b>Samples: 22</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions: Portato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 WTU_rep_dim9_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b> | <b>Samples: 22</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions: Portato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 WTU_rep_cre9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b> | <b>Samples: 22</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions: Staccato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 WTU_rep_dim9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b> | <b>Samples: 22</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions: Staccato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

**02 Long Notes - Single Layer****Range: A#1–G5****01 WTU\_sus\_p****Samples: 87****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Sustained, piano  
 1 velocity layer  
 Release samples

**02 WTU\_sus\_mf****Samples: 88****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Sustained, mezzopiano  
 1 velocity layer  
 Release samples

**03 WTU\_sus\_f****Samples: 88****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Sustained, forte  
 1 velocity layer  
 Release samples

**04 WTU\_sus\_ff****Samples: 81****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Sustained, fortissimo  
 1 velocity layer  
 Release samples

**99 RELEASE**

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

## Matrices

### Matrix - LEVEL 1

#### L1 WTU Articulation Combi

Samples: 1282 RAM: 80 MB [Level 1](#)

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato short, sustained, crescendo-diminuendo 4 and 6 sec., fortepiano and sforzato, flutter tonguing normal and crescendo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C1          | C#1       | D1      | D#1 | E1            |
|----|-------------|-----------|---------|-----|---------------|
| V1 | staccato    | sustained | pfp 4s. | fp  | flutter       |
| V2 | port. short | sustained | pfp 6s. | sfz | flutter cres. |

#### L1 WTU Perf-Legato Speed

Samples: 1310 RAM: 81 MB [Level 1](#)

Interval performances

Legato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|        | H1     | H2   |
|--------|--------|------|
| legato | normal | fast |

#### L1 WTU Perf-Repetitions Combi

Samples: 1012 RAM: 63 MB [Level 1](#)

Repetition performances

Legato slow

Portato

Staccato slow

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|    | repetitions   |
|----|---------------|
| V1 | legato slow   |
| V2 | portato       |
| V3 | staccato slow |

### Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced

#### O1 WTU Perf-Universal

Samples: 2612 RAM: 163 MB [Level 2](#)

Interval performances

Legato normal and fast

Marcato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2   |
|---------|--------|------|
| legato  | normal | fast |
| marcato | normal | fast |

**02 WTU Perf-Trill Speed****Samples: 2070 RAM: 129 MB Level 2**

Multi interval performances

Legato and trills

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|    | H1             | H2     |
|----|----------------|--------|
| V1 | legato no vib. | trills |

**03 WTU Short+Long notes - All****Samples: 1527 RAM: 95 MB Level 2**

Single notes

Staccato, portato short, medium, and long, sustained

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|    | C1       | C#1         | D1        | D#1       | E1        |
|----|----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| V1 | staccato | port. short | port.med. | port.long | sustained |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard****11 WTU Perf-Legato Speed****Samples: 1310 RAM: 81 MB Level 2**

Interval performances

Legato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|        | H1     | H2   |
|--------|--------|------|
| legato | normal | fast |

**12 WTU Perf-Marcato Speed****Samples: 1390 RAM: 86 MB Level 2**

Interval performances

Marcato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2   |
|---------|--------|------|
| marcato | normal | fast |

**13 WTU Dynamics - Small****Samples: 643 RAM: 40 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzatissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|            | C1     | C#1    | D1     |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.medium | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. |
| fp         | %      | %      | %      |
| sfz        | %      | %      | %      |
| sffz       | %      | %      | %      |

**14 WTU Dynamics - Large****Samples: 953 RAM: 59 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Crescendo-diminuendo, 4 and 6 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzattissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|             | C1     | C#1    | D1     |
|-------------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.medium  | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. |
| dyn.strong  | 3 sec. | 4 sec. | 6 sec. |
| ppf         | 4 sec. | 4 sec. | 6 sec. |
| fp/sfz/sffz | fp     | sfz    | sffz   |

**15 WTU Flutter****Samples: 129 RAM: 8 MB Level 2**

Flutter tonguing

Normal, crescendo, and normal/crescendo with Cell crossfading

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1

|         | C1     | C#1       | D1      |
|---------|--------|-----------|---------|
| flutter | normal | crescendo | Cell XF |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 WTU Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 1821 RAM: 113 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Slow and fast legato, portato, slow and fast staccato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|    | C1          | C#1         | D1      | D#1           | E1            |
|----|-------------|-------------|---------|---------------|---------------|
| V1 | legato slow | legato fast | portato | staccato slow | staccato fast |

**32 WTU Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 1227 RAM: 76 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Slow and fast legato, portato, slow staccato

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 4 zones

|    | H1          | H2          | H3      | H4            |
|----|-------------|-------------|---------|---------------|
| V1 | legato slow | legato fast | portato | staccato slow |

**33 WTU Upbeats a1****Samples: 528 RAM: 33 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 90–140, 160, and 180 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 |

**34 WTU Upbeats a2****Samples: 594 RAM: 37 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**35 WTU Upbeats a3****Samples: 594 RAM: 37 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**36 WTU Upbeats all****Samples: 1716 RAM: 107 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 90–140, 160, 180, and 200 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 180 |
| 2 upbeats | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |
| 3 upbeats | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel****71 WTU Legato - cre5****Samples: 110 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Legato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**72 WTU Portato - cre9****Samples: 198 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**73 WTU Staccato - cre9****Samples: 198 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**74 WTU Combi - cre9****Samples: 396 RAM: 24 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**75 WTU Legato - dim5****Samples: 110 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Legato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**76 WTU Portato - dim9****Samples: 198 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**77 WTU Staccato - dim9****Samples: 198 RAM: 12 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**78 WTU Combi - dim9****Samples: 396 RAM: 24 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**Presets****WTU VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 3428 RAM: 214 MB Level 1**

L1 WTU Perf-Legato Speed  
 L1 WTU Articulation Combi  
 L1 WTU Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C6–D6**WTU VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 6862 RAM: 428 MB Level 2**

01 WTU Perf-Universal  
 02 WTU Perf-Trill Speed  
 L1 WTU Articulation Combi  
 31 WTU Perf-Repetitions - Combi  
 74 WTU Combi - cre9

**Preset keyswitches:** C6–E6

## 62 Cimbasso

### Description

In 19th century Italy the term “cimbasso” described the deepest brass voice, which was performed by several different tuba-like instruments during the century. Giuseppe Verdi, who didn't like the timbre of these wide-bored conical bass instruments of his time, had a contrabass trombone with valves and a bell facing forward made in 1881: the modern cimbasso was born.

In today's orchestras the cimbasso is mainly used to perform the deepest brass voice in some Italian operas. Usually it is played by a tuba player because its mouthpiece is the same as the tuba's.

### Range and notation

The cimbasso has a range of F1–F4. Its voice is written in bass clef and is non-transposing, analogous to the 4th trombone.

### Sound characteristics

Mellow, warm, soft, powerful, compact, metallic, sustaining, resonant.

The overall sound is surprisingly mellow, clear and rich. It is less metallic and much more mellow than the contrabass trombone, as well as more concise and compact than the tuba.

### Combination with other instruments

The cimbasso is ideally suited to playing the fourth trombone part. It blends well with all the other brass instruments and with the contrabassoon.

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: D#1–G4



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato medium

Sustained

**Level 2:** Portato medium, marcato

Portato long, normal and marcato

---

### 01 CI\_staccato

Samples: 296 RAM: 18 MB **Level 1**

Staccato

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

---

### 02 CI\_portato\_medium

Samples: 296 RAM: 18 MB **Level 1**

Portato, short medium

4 velocity layers

4 Alternations

---

### 03 CI\_portato\_medium\_marc

Samples: 148 RAM: 9 MB **Level 2**

Portato, medium, marcato

2 velocity layers

4 Alternations

---

### 04 CI\_portato\_long

Samples: 259 RAM: 16 MB **Level 2**

Portato, long

4 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

---

### 05 CI\_portato\_long\_marc

Samples: 148 RAM: 9 MB **Level 2**

Portato, long, marcato

2 velocity layers

Release samples

2 Alternations

---

### 11 CI\_sus

Samples: 222 RAM: 13 MB **Level 1**

Sustained

3 velocity layers

Release samples

**02 DYNAMICS****Range: D#1–G4**

Dynamics

**Level 1:** Fortepiano, sforzato**Level 2:** Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, and 2 sec.

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, 4, and 6 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Sforzatissimo

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 CI_dyn-li_1s</b>   | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1 sec.<br>3 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                   |                |
| <b>02 CI_dyn-li_1'5s</b>   | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1.5 sec.<br>3 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                   |                |
| <b>03 CI_dyn-li_2s</b>   | <b>Samples: 222</b> | <b>RAM: 13 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Light crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>3 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 CI_dyn-me_2s</b>   | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                   |                |
| <b>12 CI_dyn-me_3s</b>   | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                   |                |
| <b>13 CI_dyn-me_4s</b>   | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                   |                |
| <b>14 CI_dyn-me_6s</b>   | <b>Samples: 148</b> | <b>RAM: 9 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 6 sec.<br>2 velocity layers<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                   |                |
| <b>21 CI_dyn-str_2s</b>  | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                   |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>22 CI_dyn-str_3s</b>  | <b>Samples: 74</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                    |                  |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>23 CI_dyn-str_4s</b>  | <b>Samples: 74</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 4 sec.<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                    |                  |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>31 CI_fp</b>                                  | <b>Samples: 37</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Fortepiano<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations |                    |                  |                |

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>32 CI_sfz</b>                               | <b>Samples: 37</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Sforzato<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations |                    |                  |                |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>33 CI_sffz</b>                                   | <b>Samples: 37</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Sforzatissimo<br>1 velocity layer<br>2 Alternations |                    |                  |                |

### 03 FLATTER Range: F1–G4



**Level 1:** Flutter tonguing normal and crescendo

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 CI_flutter</b>                                    | <b>Samples: 70</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Flutter tonguing<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples |                    |                  |                |

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 CI_flutter_cre</b>                        | <b>Samples: 35</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Flutter tonguing, crescendo<br>1 velocity layer |                    |                  |                |

### 10 PERF INTERVAL Range: D#1–G4



Interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato

**Level 2:** Legato with sustain crossfading

Marcato

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 CI_perf-legato</b>                       | <b>Samples: 868</b> | <b>RAM: 54 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Legato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples |                     |                   |                |

**02 CI\_perf-legato\_sus** Samples: 868 RAM: 54 MB Level 2

Legato  
Sustain crossfading  
2 velocity layers  
Release samples

**04 CI\_perf-marcato** Samples: 966 RAM: 60 MB Level 2

Marcato  
2 velocity layers  
Release samples

**11 PERF INTERVAL FAST** Range: D#1-G4



Fast interval performances

**Level 1:** Legato

**Level 2:** Marcato

**01 CI\_perf-legato\_fa** Samples: 940 RAM: 58 MB Level 1

Legato, fast  
2 velocity layers  
Release samples

**02 CI\_perf-marcato\_fa** Samples: 1034 RAM: 64 MB Level 2

Marcato, fast  
2 velocity layers  
Release samples

**12 PERF TRILL** Range: D#1-G4



Multi interval performances

**Level 2:** Trills, legato, minor to major 2nd

**01 CI\_perf-trill** Samples: 1592 RAM: 99 MB Level 2

Performance trills, legato, minor to major 2nd  
2 velocity layers  
Release samples

**13 PERF REPETITION** Range: D#1-D#4



Repetition performances

**Level 1:** Portato

Staccato fast

**Level 2:** Staccato slow

Dynamics for all repetitions

**01 CI\_perf-rep\_por** Range: D#1-G4 Samples: 342 RAM: 21 MB Level 1

Repetition performances: Portato  
2 velocity layers

|  |                      |                     |                   |                |
|--|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 CI_perf-rep_sta-sl</b>   |                      | <b>Samples: 306</b> | <b>RAM: 19 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato, slow<br>2 velocity layers   |                      |                     |                   |                |
| <b>03 CI_perf-rep_sta-fa</b>   |                      | <b>Samples: 306</b> | <b>RAM: 19 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato, fast<br>2 velocity layers   |                      |                     |                   |                |
| <b>11 CI_perf-rep_dyn5_por</b>   | <b>Range: D#1–G4</b> | <b>Samples: 190</b> | <b>RAM: 11 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Portato dynamics, 5 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo        |                      |                     |                   |                |
| <b>12 CI_perf-rep_dyn9_sta-sl</b>  |                      | <b>Samples: 306</b> | <b>RAM: 19 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, slow, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                      |                     |                   |                |
| <b>13 CI_perf-rep_dyn9_sta-fa</b>  |                      | <b>Samples: 306</b> | <b>RAM: 19 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, fast, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                      |                     |                   |                |

#### 14 UPBEAT REPETITION

Repetitions

**Level 2:** 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

|  |                      |                    |                  |   |
|--|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|---|
| <b>A Single Upbeat</b>                             | <b>Range: D#1–G4</b> |                    |                  |  |
| <b>01 CI_UB-a1_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)</b> |                      | <b>Samples: 74</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| 1 upbeat, 80–150 BPM<br>2 velocity layers          |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>B Double Upbeats</b>                            | <b>Range: D#1–G4</b> |                    |                  |  |
| <b>01 CI_UB-a2_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)</b> |                      | <b>Samples: 74</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| 2 upbeats, 80–150 BPM<br>2 velocity layers         |                      |                    |                  |   |
| <b>C Triple Upbeats</b>                            | <b>Range: D#1–G4</b> |                    |                  |  |
| <b>01 CI_UB-a3_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/150)</b> |                      | <b>Samples: 74</b> | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| 3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM<br>2 velocity layers         |                      |                    |                  |   |

**15 GRACE NOTES****Range: D#1–G4**

Phrases

**Level 2:** Grace notes

Minor and major 2nd

Up and down

Mapped to target note

**01 CI\_grace-1****Samples: 222 RAM: 13 MB Level 2**

Grace notes, minor 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

AB switch: up/down

**02 CI\_grace-2****Samples: 218 RAM: 13 MB Level 2**

Grace notes, major 2nd

2 velocity layers

Release samples

AB switch: up/down

**98 RESOURCES**

Resources

**Level 2:** Isolated dynamics repetitions: Portato, staccato

Single layer long notes

**01 Perf Rep dyn****01 CI\_rep\_cre5\_por-1 (2/3/4/5)****Range: D#1–G4 Samples: 19 RAM: 1 MB Level 2**

Extracted repetitions: Portato, crescendo, 1st to 5th note

1 velocity layer

**01 CI\_rep\_dim5\_por-1 (2/3/4/5)****Range: D#1–G4 Samples: 19 RAM: 1 MB Level 2**

Extracted repetitions: Portato, diminuendo, 1st to 5th note

1 velocity layer

**02 CI\_rep\_cre9\_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)****Range: D#1–D#4 Samples: 17 RAM: 1 MB Level 2**

Extracted repetitions: Staccato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note

1 velocity layer

**02 CI\_rep\_dim9\_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)****Range: D#1–D#4 Samples: 17 RAM: 1 MB Level 2**

Extracted repetitions: Staccato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note

1 velocity layer

**02 Long Notes - Single Layer****Range: D#1–G4****01 CI\_sus\_p\_noVib****Samples: 74 RAM: 4 MB Level 2**

Sustained, piano, without vibrato

1 velocity layer

Release samples

---

**02 CI\_sus\_mf\_noVib****Samples: 74****RAM: 4 MB****Level 2**

Sustained, mezzoforte, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

**03 CI\_sus\_f\_noVib****Samples: 74****RAM: 4 MB****Level 2**

Sustained, forte, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

**99 RELEASE**

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

## Matrices

### Matrix - LEVEL 1

#### L1 CI Articulation Combi

Samples: 1254 RAM: 78 MB [Level 1](#)

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato medium, sustained, medium crescendo and diminuendo 2 and 4 sec., fortepiano and sforzato, flutter tonguing

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C6           | C#6       | D6           | D#6 | E6      |
|----|--------------|-----------|--------------|-----|---------|
| V1 | staccato     | sustained | dyn.med. 2s. | fp  | flutter |
| V2 | port. medium | sustained | dyn.med. 4s. | sfz | flutter |

#### L1 CI Perf-Legato Speed

Samples: 1080 RAM: 67 MB [Level 1](#)

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading, normal, and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1     | H2     | H3   |
|--------|--------|--------|------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal | fast |

#### L1 CI Perf-Repetitions Combi

Samples: 648 RAM: 40 MB [Level 1](#)

Repetition performances

Portato

Staccato slow

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | repetitions   |
|----|---------------|
| V1 | portato       |
| V2 | staccato slow |

### Matrix - LEVEL 2 A - Advanced

#### O1 CI Perf-Universal

Samples: 2184 RAM: 136 MB [Level 2](#)

Interval performances

Legato with sustain crossfading, normal, and fast

Marcato normal and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2     | H3   |
|---------|--------|--------|------|
| legato  | sus-XF | normal | fast |
| marcato | normal | normal | fast |

**02 CI Perf-Trill Speed****Samples: 1732 RAM: 108 MB Level 2**

Multi interval performances  
 Legato and trills  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|    | H1     | H2     |
|----|--------|--------|
| V1 | legato | trills |

**03 CI Short+Long notes****Samples: 962 RAM: 60 MB Level 2**

Single notes  
 Staccato, portato medium, portato long, and sustained

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D#6

|    | C6       | C#6        | D6        | D#6       |
|----|----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| V1 | staccato | port. med. | port.long | sustained |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard****11 CI Perf-Legato Speed****Samples: 1080 RAM: 67 MB Level 2**

Interval performances  
 Legato with sustain crossfading, normal, and fast  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|        | H1     | H2     | H3   |
|--------|--------|--------|------|
| legato | sus-XF | normal | fast |

**12 CI Perf-Marcato Speed****Samples: 1178 RAM: 73 MB Level 2**

Interval performances<sup>m</sup>Marcato normal and fast  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 2 zones

|         | H1     | H2   |
|---------|--------|------|
| marcato | normal | fast |

**13 CI Dynamics - Small****Samples: 555 RAM: 34 MB Level 2**

Dynamics  
 Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.  
 Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzatisimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|            | C6     | C#6    | D6     |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.medium | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 4 sec. |
| fp         | %      | %      | %      |
| sfz        | %      | %      | %      |
| sffz       | %      | %      | %      |

**14 CI Dynamics - Large****Samples: 1443 RAM: 90 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Light crescendo and diminuendo, 1, 1.5, and 2 sec.

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Strong crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 4 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzatissimo

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6 Vertical: Modwheel, 4 zones

|             | C6     | C#6      | D6     |
|-------------|--------|----------|--------|
| dyn.light   | 1 sec. | 1.5 sec. | 2 sec. |
| dyn.medium  | 2 sec. | 3 sec.   | 4 sec. |
| dyn.strong  | 2 sec. | 3 sec.   | 4 sec. |
| fp/sfz/sffz | fp     | sfz      | sffz   |

**15 CI Flatter****Samples: 105 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Flutter tonguing

Normal, crescendo, and normal/crescendo with Cell crossfading

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6

|         | C6     | C#6       | D6      |
|---------|--------|-----------|---------|
| flutter | normal | crescendo | Cell XF |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 CI Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 954 RAM: 59 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Portato, and staccato slow and fast

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–D6

|    | C6      | C#6           | D6            |
|----|---------|---------------|---------------|
| V1 | portato | staccato slow | staccato fast |

**32 CI Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 954 RAM: 59 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Portato, and staccato slow and fast

Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|    | H1      | H2            | H3            |
|----|---------|---------------|---------------|
| V1 | portato | staccato slow | staccato fast |

**33 CI Upbeats a1****Samples: 592 RAM: 37 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**34 CI Upbeats a2****Samples: 592 RAM: 37 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**35 CI Upbeats a3****Samples: 586 RAM: 36 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**36 CI Upbeats all****Samples: 1770 RAM: 110 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 80–150 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G6 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C6 | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |
| 2 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |
| 3 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 150 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 D - Scale+Phrase****41 CI Grace notes - All****Samples: 366 RAM: 22 MB Level 2**

Grace notes, minor and major 2nd

AB switch up/down

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–C#6

|          | C6       | C#6      |
|----------|----------|----------|
| interval | min. 2nd | maj. 2nd |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel****71 CI Portato - cre5****Samples: 95 RAM: 5 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**72 CI Staccato - cre9****Samples: 153 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G#6

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  | G#6 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**73 CI Portato - dim5****Samples: 95 RAM: 5 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–E6

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**74 CI Staccato - dim9****Samples: 153 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C6–G#6

|          | C6  | C#6 | D6  | D#6 | E6  | F6  | F#6 | G6  | G#6 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**Presets****CI VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 2834 RAM: 177 MB Level 1**

L1 CI Perf-Legato Speed

L1 CI Articulation Combi

L1 CI Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C7–D7**CI VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 5261 RAM: 328 MB Level 2**

01 CI Perf-Universal

02 CI Perf-Trill Speed

L1 CI Articulation Combi

31 CI Perf-Repetitions - Combi

72 CI Staccato - cre9

**Preset keyswitches:** C7–E7

# 65 Horns - a8

## Patches

### 01 SHORT + LONG NOTES

Range: A#1–E5



Single notes

**Level 1:** Staccato

Portato short

Sustained

**Level 2:** Portato medium

Sustained, blared

### 01 HO-8\_staccato

Samples: 120

RAM: 7 MB

**Level 1**

Staccato

4 velocity layers

2 Alternations

### 02 HO-8\_portato\_short

Samples: 120

RAM: 7 MB

**Level 1**

Portato, short

4 velocity layers

2 Alternations

### 03 HO-8\_portato\_medium

Samples: 120

RAM: 7 MB

**Level 2**

Portato, medium

4 velocity layers

2 Alternations

### 21 HO-8\_sus

Range: A#1–D5

Samples: 152

RAM: 9 MB

**Level 1**

Sustained

4 velocity layers

Release samples

### 22 HO-8\_sus\_blare

Range: A#1–D5

Samples: 19

RAM: 1 MB

**Level 2**

Sustained, blared

1 velocity layer

**02 DYNAMICS****Range: A#1–E5**

Dynamics

**Level 1:** Crescendo-diminuendo, 6 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato

**Level 2:** Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 5 sec.

Sforzatissimo

**01 HO-8\_dyn-me\_2s****Samples: 80****RAM: 5 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**02 HO-8\_dyn-me\_3s****Samples: 76****RAM: 4 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 3 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**03 HO-8\_dyn-me\_5s****Samples: 76****RAM: 4 MB****Level 2**

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 5 sec.

2 velocity layers

AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo

**11 HO-8\_pfp\_6s****Range: A#1–D5****Samples: 38****RAM: 2 MB****Level 1**

Crescendo-diminuendo, 6 sec.

2 velocity layers

**21 HO-8\_fp****Samples: 20****RAM: 1 MB****Level 1**

Fortepiano

1 velocity layer

**22 HO-8\_sfz****Samples: 20****RAM: 1 MB****Level 1**

Sforzato

1 velocity layer

**23 HO-8\_sffz****Samples: 20****RAM: 1 MB****Level 2**

Sforzatissimo

1 velocity layer

**03 FLATTER + TRILLS****Range: A#1–D5**

Flutter tonguing, trills, and chords

**Level 1:** Flutter tonguing, normal and crescendo

Trills, minor and major 2nd

**Level 2:** Minor and major chords**01 HO-8\_flatter****Samples: 38****RAM: 2 MB****Level 1**

Flutter tonguing

1 velocity layer

Release samples

|  |                      |                     |                   |   |
|--|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---|
| <b>02 HO-8_flutter_cre</b>   |                      | <b>Samples: 19</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b>  | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Flutter tonguing, crescendo<br>1 velocity layer  |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>11 HO-8_trill_1</b>   |                      | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Trills, minor 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples  |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>12 HO-8_trill_2</b>   |                      | <b>Samples: 74</b>  | <b>RAM: 4 MB</b>  | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Trills, major 2nd<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples  |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>21 HO-8_chord-major</b>   | <b>Range: A#1-D4</b> | <b>Samples: 26</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Chords, major<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples   |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>22 HO-8_chord-minor</b>   | <b>Range: A#1-D4</b> | <b>Samples: 26</b>  | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b>  | <b>Level 2</b>  |
| Chords, minor<br>1 velocity layer<br>Release samples   |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>10 PERF INTERVAL</b>  | <b>Range: A#1-D5</b> |                     |                   |  |
| Interval performances<br><b>Level 1:</b> Legato  |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>01 HO-8_perf-legato</b>   |                      | <b>Samples: 930</b> | <b>RAM: 58 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Legato<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples   |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>11 PERF REPETITION</b>  | <b>Range: A#1-E5</b> |                     |                   |  |
| Repetition performances<br><b>Level 1:</b> Legato<br>Portato<br>Staccato<br><b>Level 2:</b> Dynamics for all repetitions |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>01 HO-8_perf-rep_leg</b>  |                      | <b>Samples: 200</b> | <b>RAM: 12 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Repetition performances: Legato<br>2 velocity layers   |                      |                     |                   |   |
| <b>02 HO-8_perf-rep_por</b>  |                      | <b>Samples: 360</b> | <b>RAM: 22 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b>  |
| Repetition performances: Portato<br>2 velocity layers  |                      |                     |                   |   |

|  |                     |                   |                |
|--|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 HO-8_perf-rep_sta</b>  | <b>Samples: 360</b> | <b>RAM: 22 MB</b> | <b>Level 1</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato<br>2 velocity layers   |                     |                   |                |
| <b>21 HO-8_perf-rep_dyn5_leg</b>   | <b>Samples: 200</b> | <b>RAM: 12 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Legato dynamics, 5 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo   |                     |                   |                |
| <b>22 HO-8_perf-rep_dyn9_por</b>   | <b>Samples: 360</b> | <b>RAM: 22 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Portato dynamics, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo  |                     |                   |                |
| <b>23 HO-8_perf-rep_dyn9_sta</b>   | <b>Samples: 360</b> | <b>RAM: 22 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Repetition performances: Staccato dynamics, 9 repetitions<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                     |                   |                |

**12 FAST REPETITION****Range: A#1–E5**

Fast repetitions

**Level 2:** Staccato, 9 repetitions, 140 to 180 BPM

Normal and dynamics

|  |                    |                  |                |
|--|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 HO-8_fast-rep_140 (150/160/170/180)</b>  | <b>Samples: 80</b> | <b>RAM: 5 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Fast repetitions: 140–180 BPM<br>2 velocity layers<br>Release samples                          |                    |                  |                |
| <b>11 HO-8_fast-rep_140_dyn (150/160/170/180)</b>  | <b>Samples: 40</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| Fast repetitions: Dynamics, 140–180 BPM<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: crescendo/diminuendo |                    |                  |                |

**13 UPBEAT REPETITION**

Repetitions

**Level 2:** 1–3 upbeats, 80–140, and 160 BPM**A Single Upbeat**

Range: A#1–E5

**01 HO-8\_UB-a1\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160)**

Samples: 40

RAM: 2 MB

**Level 2**1 upbeat, 80–140, and 160 BPM  
2 velocity layers**B Double Upbeats**

Range: A#1–E5

**01 HO-8\_UB-a2\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160)**

Samples: 40

RAM: 2 MB

**Level 2**2 upbeats, 80–140, and 160 BPM  
2 velocity layers**C Triple Upbeats**

Range: A#1–E5

**01 HO-8\_UB-a3\_80 (90/100/110/120/130/140/160)**

Samples: 40

RAM: 2 MB

**Level 2**3 upbeats, 80–140, and 160 BPM  
2 velocity layers**14 GLISSANDI**

Range: A#1–D5



Interval performances/Phrases

**Level 2:** Performance glissandos, normal and fast, minor 3rd to octave

Fixed glissandos, 4th to octave, up and down

Slow octave glissando

Please note that fixed glissandos have different up and down ranges.

**01 HO-8\_perf-gliss**

Samples: 352

RAM: 22 MB

**Level 2**Glissando, minor 3rd to octave  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples**02 HO-8\_perf-gliss\_speed**

Samples: 264

RAM: 16 MB

**Level 2**Glissando, fast, minor 3rd to octave  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples**11 HO-8\_gliss-5**

Samples: 34

RAM: 2 MB

**Level 2**Glissando, 4th  
1 velocity layer  
AB switch: up/down

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>12 HO-8_gliss-6</b><br>Glissando, diminished 5th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down     | <b>Samples: 32</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>13 HO-8_gliss-7</b><br>Glissando, 5th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down                | <b>Samples: 32</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>14 HO-8_gliss-8</b><br>Glissando, minor 6th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down          | <b>Samples: 30</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>15 HO-8_gliss-9</b><br>Glissando, major 6th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down          | <b>Samples: 30</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>16 HO-8_gliss-10</b><br>Glissando, minor 7th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down         | <b>Samples: 28</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>17 HO-8_gliss-11</b><br>Glissando, major 7th<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down         | <b>Samples: 28</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>18 HO-8_gliss-12</b><br>Glissando, octave<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down            | <b>Samples: 28</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
| <b>19 HO-8_gliss-12-fast</b><br>Glissando, fast, octave<br>1 velocity layer<br>AB switch: up/down | <b>Samples: 26</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |

## 98 RESOURCES

Resources

**Level 2:** Isolated dynamics repetitions: Legato, portato, and staccato

Single layer long notes

|  |                      |                  |                |
|--|----------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 Perf Rep dyn</b>   | <b>Range: A#1–E5</b> |                  |                |
| <b>01 HO-8_rep_cre5_leg-1 (2/3/4/5)</b><br>Extracted repetitions<br>Legato, crescendo, 1st to 5th note | <b>Samples: 20</b>   | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |

1 velocity layer

---

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 HO-8_rep_dim5_leg-1 (2/3/4/5)</b> | <b>Samples: 20</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions  
Legato, diminuendo, 1st to 5th note  
1 velocity layer

---

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 HO-8_rep_cre9_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b> | <b>Samples: 20</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions: Portato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

---

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 HO-8_rep_dim9_por-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b> | <b>Samples: 20</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions: Portato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

---

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 HO-8_rep_cre9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b> | <b>Samples: 20</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions: Staccato, crescendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

---

|   |                    |                  |                |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 HO-8_rep_dim9_sta-1 (2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9)</b> | <b>Samples: 20</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|---|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Extracted repetitions: Staccato, diminuendo, 1st to 9th note  
1 velocity layer

---

|                                     |                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>02 Long Notes - Single Layer</b> | <b>Range: A#1–D5</b> |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|

---

|                            |                    |                  |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>01 HO-8_sus_p_noVib</b> | <b>Samples: 38</b> | <b>RAM: 2 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Sustained, piano, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

|                             |                    |                  |                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>02 HO-8_sus_mp_noVib</b> | <b>Samples: 19</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Sustained, mezzopiano, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

|                            |                    |                  |                |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>03 HO-8_sus_f_noVib</b> | <b>Samples: 19</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Sustained, forte, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

|                             |                    |                  |                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| <b>04 HO-8_sus_ff_noVib</b> | <b>Samples: 19</b> | <b>RAM: 1 MB</b> | <b>Level 2</b> |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|

Sustained, fortissimo, without vibrato  
1 velocity layer  
Release samples

---

## 99 RELEASE

This section contains release samples for various patches of the other sections. Please do not try to load them into a Vienna Instruments matrix – you will not be able to hear anything when you try to play them.

## Matrices

### Matrix - LEVEL 1

#### L1 HO-8 Articulation Combi

Samples: 694 RAM: 43 MB [Level 1](#)

Single note articulations

Staccato, portato short, sustained normal and blared, crescendo-diminuendo 6 sec., fortissimo and sforzato, flutter tonguing normal and crescendo, trills half and whole tone

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–F1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | C1          | C#1         | D1      | D#1 | E1            | F1          |
|----|-------------|-------------|---------|-----|---------------|-------------|
| V1 | stac        | sus. normal | pfp 6s. | fp  | flutter       | trill half  |
| V2 | port. short | sus. blared | pfp 6s. | sfz | flutter cres. | trill whole |

#### L1 HO-8 Perf-Legato

Samples: 930 RAM: 58 MB [Level 1](#)

Interval performances

Legato

#### L1 HO-8 Perf-Repetitions Com

Samples: 920 RAM: 57 MB [Level 1](#)

Repetition performances

Legato

Portato

Staccato

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|    | repetitions |
|----|-------------|
| V1 | legato      |
| V2 | portato     |
| V3 | staccato    |

### Matrix - LEVEL 2 B - Standard

#### 11 HO-8 Perf-Legato

Samples: 930 RAM: 58 MB [Level 2](#)

Interval performances

Legato

#### 12 HO-8 Short + Long notes

Samples: 531 RAM: 33 MB [Level 2](#)

Single notes

Staccato, portato short, and medium, and sustained

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D#1

|    | C1       | C#1         | D1           | D#1       |
|----|----------|-------------|--------------|-----------|
| V1 | staccato | port. short | port. medium | sustained |

**13 HO-8 Dynamics****Samples: 330 RAM: 20 MB Level 2**

Dynamics

Medium crescendo and diminuendo, 2, 3, and 5 sec.

Fortepiano, sforzato, sforzatissimo

Crescendo-diminuendo, 6 sec.

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1 Vertical: Modwheel, 5 zones

|            | C1     | C#1    | D1     |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|
| dyn.medium | 2 sec. | 3 sec. | 5 sec. |
| fp         | %      | %      | %      |
| sfz        | %      | %      | %      |
| sffz       | %      | %      | %      |
| ppf        | 6 sec. | 6 sec. | 6 sec. |

**14 HO-8 Flatter****Samples: 57 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Flutter tonguing

Normal, crescendo, and normal/crescendo with Cell crossfading

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1

|         | C1     | C#1       | D1      |
|---------|--------|-----------|---------|
| flutter | normal | crescendo | Cell XF |

**15 HO-8 Trills - normal****Samples: 148 RAM: 9 MB Level 2**

Trills, minor and major 2nd

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | trills   |
|----|----------|
| V1 | min. 2nd |
| V2 | maj. 2nd |

**16 HO-8 Chords****Samples: 52 RAM: 3 MB Level 2**

Chords, major and minor

**Matrix switches:** Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|    | chords |
|----|--------|
| V1 | major  |
| V2 | minor  |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 C - Repetitions****31 HO-8 Perf-Repetitions - Combi****Samples: 920 RAM: 57 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances

Legato, portato, and staccato

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–D1

|    | C1     | C#1     | D1       |
|----|--------|---------|----------|
| V1 | legato | portato | staccato |

**32 HO-8 Perf-Repetitions - Speed****Samples: 920 RAM: 57 MB Level 2**

Repetition performances  
 Legato, portato, and staccato  
 Speed controller

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Speed, 3 zones

|    | H1     | H2      | H3       |
|----|--------|---------|----------|
| V1 | legato | portato | staccato |

**33 HO-8 Fast-Repetitions****Samples: 240 RAM: 15 MB Level 2**

Fast repetitions: Staccato, 140–180 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|           | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 140 | 150 | 160 | 170 | 180 |

**34 HO-8 Upbeats a1****Samples: 312 RAM: 19 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1 upbeat, 80–140, and 160 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 |

**35 HO-8 Upbeats a2****Samples: 312 RAM: 19 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 2 upbeats, 80–140, and 160 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 |

**36 HO-8 Upbeats a3****Samples: 312 RAM: 19 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 3 upbeats, 80–140, and 160 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G1

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| speed/BPM | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 |

**37 HO-8 Upbeats all****Samples: 936 RAM: 58 MB Level 2**

Repetitions: 1–3 upbeats, 80–140, and 160 BPM

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G1 Vertical: Modwheel, 3 zones

|           | C1 | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  |
|-----------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 upbeat  | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 |
| 2 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 |
| 3 upbeats | 80 | 90  | 100 | 110 | 120 | 130 | 140 | 160 |

**Matrix - LEVEL 2 E - Keyswitch Vel****71 HO-8 Legato - cre5****Samples: 100 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Legato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**72 HO-8 Portato - cre9****Samples: 180 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**73 HO-8 Staccato - cre9****Samples: 180 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**74 HO-8 Combi - cre9****Samples: 360 RAM: 22 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Crescendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**75 HO-8 Legato - dim5****Samples: 100 RAM: 6 MB Level 2**

Legato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 5 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–E1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th |

**76 HO-8 Portato - dim9****Samples: 180 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Portato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity  
 Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**77 HO-8 Staccato - dim9****Samples: 180 RAM: 11 MB Level 2**

Staccato notes: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| velocity | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |

**78 HO-8 Combi - dim9****Samples: 360 RAM: 22 MB Level 2**

Portato and staccato: Diminuendo, keyswitch velocity

Keyswitches control 9 dynamic steps

**Matrix switches:** Horizontal: Keyswitches, C1–G#1 Vertical: Modwheel, 2 zones

|          | C1  | C#1 | D1  | D#1 | E1  | F1  | F#1 | G1  | G#1 |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| portato  | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | 5th | 6th | 7th | 8th | 9th |
| staccato | 1st | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   | %   |

**Presets****HO-8 VSL Preset Level 1****Samples: 2506 RAM: 156 MB Level 1**

L1 HO-8 Perf-Legato Speed

L1 HO-8 Articulation Combi

L1 HO-8 Perf-Repetitions Combi

**Preset keyswitches:** C6–D6**HO-8 VSL Preset Level 2****Samples: 2866 RAM: 179 MB Level 2**

01 HO-8 Perf-Legato

01 HO-8 Perf-Legato

L1 HO-8 Articulation Combi

31 HO-8 Perf-Repetitions - Combi

74 HO-8 Combi - cre9

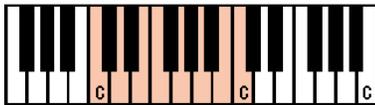
**Preset keyswitches:** C6–E6

# Appendix 1 – Scale Layouts and Ranges

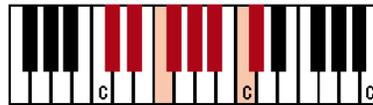
In the following, you will find notations and keyboard layout graphics for major scale runs, as well as a list of playing ranges for the piccolo trumpet's runs.

## Scale runs - major

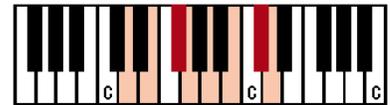
C major



C#/Db major



D major



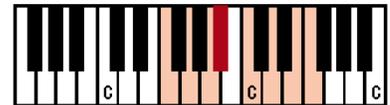
D#/Eb major



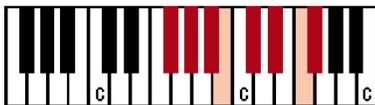
E major



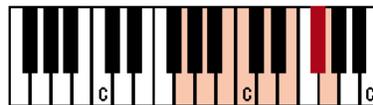
F major



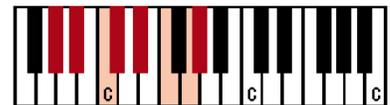
F#/Gb major



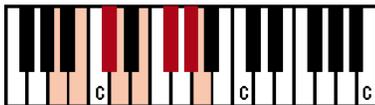
G major



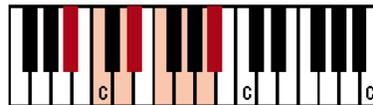
G#/Ab major



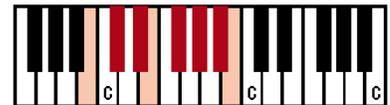
A major



A#/Bb major



B major



## Piccolo Trumpet scale ranges

### Octave runs

| <b>Legato major</b>  | <b>play range</b> |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 01 PTr_run-leg_C-ma  | D4–D6             |
| 02 PTr_run-leg_C#-ma | D#4–D#6           |
| 03 PTr_run-leg_D-ma  | D4–C#6            |
| 04 PTr_run-leg_D#-ma | D#4–D6            |
| 05 PTr_run-leg_E-ma  | C#4–C#6           |
| 06 PTr_run-leg_F-ma  | D4–D6             |
| 07 PTr_run-leg_F#-ma | C#4–C#6           |
| 08 PTr_run-leg_G-ma  | D4–D6             |
| 09 PTr_run-leg_G#-ma | C#4–C#6           |
| 10 PTr_run-leg_A-ma  | D4–D6             |
| 11 PTr_run-leg_A#-ma | D4–C6             |
| 12 PTr_run-leg_B-ma  | D#4–D#6           |

## Appendix 2 – Vienna Instruments PRO II Matrices and Presets

### Introduction

#### Update Installation – DVD Collections

All new VI PRO 2 Presets and Matrices are installed by installing the Library Updates, available in your User Area [www.vsl.co.at/user](http://www.vsl.co.at/user).

Make sure that you have installed the latest version of Vienna Instruments PRO 2 and launch the Directory Manager.

WIN: “Start” button => “All programs” => “Vienna Instruments PRO”

OS X: “Applications” => “Vienna Instruments PRO”

Drag your downloaded Library Update .zip files on top of the sample content folder list in the Directory Manager; there is no need to unpack them first. It is also possible to take more than one .zip, as they will be installed one after the other. You will be guided through the update installation.

**Attention:** Please make sure to have all the Vienna Instruments Libraries you want to update loaded entirely in the Directory Manager – this will save you a few mouseclicks.

#### General Information

All Vienna Instruments PRO 2 Presets and Matrices have been saved with their cells disabled. This way you can load them quickly to analyze the various loaded Presets and Matrices.

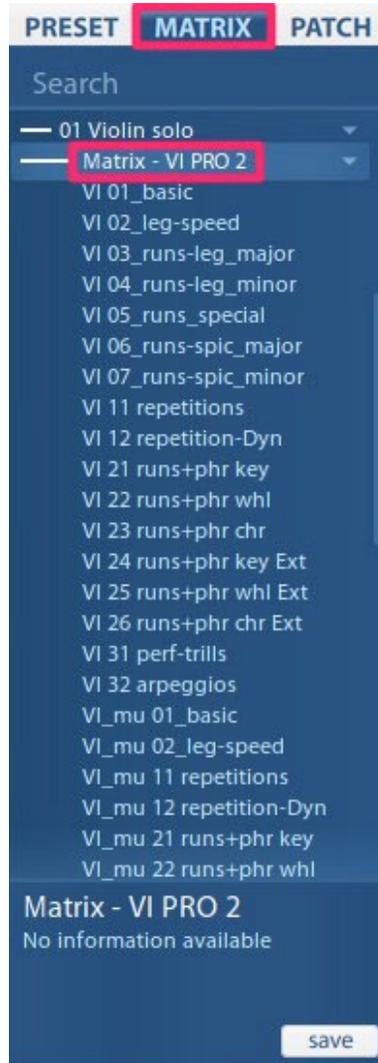
If you activate “Force Enabled ON” in the Settings Menu, these Presets and Matrices will be loaded with enabled cells.



## Single Instrument Matrices

There are special folders for Vienna Instruments PRO 2 in the Matrix list of all String and Wind Instruments:

### “MATRIX – VI PRO 2”



These folders hold up to 17 new Matrices.

Matrices from 01–09 are “conventional” matrices, without the internal APP Sequencer activated.

Matrix 11 and higher contain sequence-based Matrices.

**“O1\_basic” – The Allround Matrix**

Available for all String and Wind Instruments.

A collection of the most essential articulations of the given instrument, with up to 40 different patches.

The Patches have been assembled from the Standard & Extended Library content of each Vienna Instruments Collection, but of course these Matrices are also available if you only have a license for the Standard Library of your Collection. The Patches that are not available will appear with a red background in the Matrix Cells and in the Slot Rack.

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Keyswitches

For Bass to Soprano Instruments (lowest note C2): C1 upwards

For Contra Bass Instruments (lowest notes below C2): C6 upwards

Use these Keyswitches to change between main categories of Patches like short notes, sustains and Performance Intervals.

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** CC1 (ModWheel)

Use the ModWheel to access different variations of a main category, e.g., sustains: with and without vibrato, with progressive vibrato.

**Cell Configuration:**

- C Short Single Note samples (staccato, détaché, portato)
- C# Sustains (with/without vibrato)
- D Dynamic Single Notes (fortepiano, sforzando, sforzantissimo)
- D# Performance Intervals (legato, trills, marcato, portamento)
- E Performance Repetitions (legato, portato, staccato, spiccato, harsh)
- F Fast Repetitions (in different tempos)
- F# Tremolo, flutter tongue, recorded trills
- G pizzicato, col legno (strings only)
- G# Harmonics (strings only)
- A Ponticello (strings only)

The configuration of individual Cells has been designed to be interchangeable throughout all instruments; e.g., a staccato will always be found in the same Cell position, irrespective of whether you are using a string or a wind instrument. This allows a quick change of instruments in your arrangement.

**“O2\_leg-speed” (resp. “glissando-speed”) – Tweakable Intervals**

Available for all String and Woodwind Instruments, as well as for Brass Instruments with Glissando/Portamento Patches.

The new Enveloped Stretching tools in Vienna Instruments PRO 2 allow you to control the transition length of Performance Interval Patches in real-time.

**Attention:** Loading or “enabling” these matrices for the first time will cause some delay due to the necessary rendering time.

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Keyswitches

For Bass to Soprano Instruments (lowest note C2): C1 upwards

For Contrabass Instruments (lowest notes below C2): C6 upwards

Use these Keyswitches to change between different Performance Interval Patches (legato, portamento, glissando).

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** CC1 (ModWheel)

Use the ModWheel to access different transition lengths for the Performance Interval Patches.

CC1 = 1 Slow transitions

CC1 = 64 Regular transitions

CC1 = 127 Fast transitions

**“03\_runs-leg\_major” – Major runs on Speed**

Available for all String and Wind Instruments with originally recorded Run Patches (Solo Violin, Orchestral Strings, selected Woodwinds, Trumpets)

Enveloped time-stretching lets you switch between different rendered speeds of the recorded runs in real-time.

The first cells of each matrix row show the tempo in BPM.

The originally played runs were performed as 32nd notes.

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Keyswitches

For Bass to Soprano Instruments (lowest note C2): C1 upwards

For Contrabass Instruments (lowest notes below C2): C6 upwards

Use these Keyswitches to change between different scales from C major to B major.

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** CC1 (ModWheel)

Use the ModWheel to trigger different speed variations, up to 7 tempo variations.

CC1 = 1     Slowest

CC1 = 127   Fastest

**Hint:** For a more accurate selection of the intended playing speed it will make sense to change the Y-Axis Controller to Keyswitches.

**“04\_runs-leg\_minor” – Minor runs on Speed**

Like Matrix “03\_runs-leg\_major”, but based on minor harmonic scales.

**“05\_runs-special” – Special Scale runs on Speed**

Like Matrix “03\_runs-leg\_major”, but based on chromatic and whole-tone scales.

**“11 repetitions” – Repetitions without restrictions**

Available for all String and Wind Instruments.

An APP Sequencer based Matrix with Host Tempo Sync activated by default.

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations/Patches are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab)

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches

For Bass to Soprano Instruments (lowest note C2): C1 upwards

For Contrabass Instruments (lowest notes below C2): C6 upwards

The variations available in the Y-Axis are generally sequences assembled from one or 2 different articulations. For Strings, these are spiccato and staccato Performance Repetitions. For Wind Instruments, these are portato and staccato Performance Repetitions.

You can access up to 12 different pre-programmed patterns:

|                |                   |  |
|----------------|-------------------|--|
| <b>Slot 1</b>  | <b>“16th”</b>     | 16th notes based on one articulation.  |
| <b>Slot 2</b>  | <b>“16 2mc”</b>   | 16th notes based on two different articulations, accents are achieved by using the “longer” articulation.                |
| <b>Slot 3</b>  | <b>“16 mc”</b>    | 16th notes based on two different articulations, accents are achieved by using 2 “longer” articulations.                 |
| <b>Slot 4</b>  | <b>“up 2”</b>     | Sequence of one 8th note and two 16th notes.   |
| <b>Slot 5</b>  | <b>“up 1”</b>     | Upbeats, sequence of one 8th note and one 16th note.   |
| <b>Slot 6</b>  | <b>“16 a3”</b>    | Sequence of three 16th notes and one 16th rest.  |
| <b>Slot 7</b>  | <b>“triplet”</b>  | 8th triplets based on one articulation.  |
| <b>Slot 8</b>  | <b>“trip mc”</b>  | 8th triplets based on two different articulations, accents are achieved by using the “longer” articulation.              |
| <b>Slot 9</b>  | <b>“trip mc2”</b> | 8th triplets based on two different articulations, every quarter beat is accentuated by using the “longer” articulation. |
| <b>Slot 10</b> | <b>“trip up1”</b> | Triplet Upbeats  |
| <b>Slot 11</b> | <b>“Phrase A”</b> | Example 1 of a combination of different articulations.   |
| <b>Slot 12</b> | <b>“Phrase B”</b> | Example 2 of a combination of different articulations.   |

**“12 repetition-Dyn” – Dynamite Dynamics**

Available for all String and Wind Instruments with perf-repetition\_dyn Patches.

An APP Sequencer based Matrix with Host Tempo Sync activated by default.

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations/Patches are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab)

The available patterns are based on Performance Repetition Patches. The different volumes of the contained notes are as originally recorded and are NOT triggered by MIDI velocity.

There are up to 9 different volume levels available for every recorded dynamic repetition pattern.

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches

For Bass to Soprano Instruments (lowest note C2): C1 upwards

For Contrabass Instruments (lowest notes below C2): C6 upwards

The available variations are different successions of crescendo and diminuendo repetition patterns in 16th notes.

|                |                   |   |
|----------------|-------------------|---|
| <b>Slot 1</b>  | <b>“cre-dim”</b>  | Sequence of eight 16th notes from pp–ff, followed by eight 16th notes from ff–pp  |
| <b>Slot 2</b>  | <b>“dim-cre”</b>  | Sequence of eight 16th notes from ff–pp, followed by eight 16th notes from pp–ff  |
| <b>Slot 3</b>  | <b>“cr-di sh”</b> | Sequence of four 16th notes from pp–ff, followed by 4 16th notes from ff–pp   |
| <b>Slot 4</b>  | <b>“di-cr sh”</b> | Sequence of four 16th notes from ff–pp, followed by four 16th notes from pp–ff  |
| <b>Slot 5</b>  | <b>“cre step”</b> | A series of 4 sequences, each with 4 16th notes, starting with pp. Every following sequence starts at the next higher volume from the preceding one.  |
| <b>Slot 6</b>  | <b>“dim step”</b> | A series of 4 sequences, each with 4 16th notes, starting with ff. Every following sequence starts with the next lower volume from the preceding one. |
| <b>Slot 7</b>  | <b>“accent A”</b> | A series of 4 sequences, each with 4 16th notes, with an accentuation on the quarter beat and crescendos towards the accentuated notes.               |
| <b>Slot 8</b>  | <b>“accent B”</b> | A series of 4 sequence parts, each with 4 16th notes, with an accentuation on the quarter beat and strong crescendos towards the accentuated notes.   |
| <b>Slot 9</b>  | <b>“Phrase A”</b> | Example 1 of a combination of different articulations.  |
| <b>Slot 10</b> | <b>“Phrase B”</b> | Example 2 of a combination of different articulations.  |
| <b>Slot 11</b> | <b>“Phrase C”</b> | Example 3 of a combination of different articulations.  |
| <b>Slot 12</b> | <b>“Phrase D”</b> | Example 4 of a combination of different articulations.  |

## “21 runs+phr key” – Diatonic Runs & Phrases

Available for all String and Wind Instruments.

An APP Sequencer based Matrix with Host Tempo Sync activated by default.

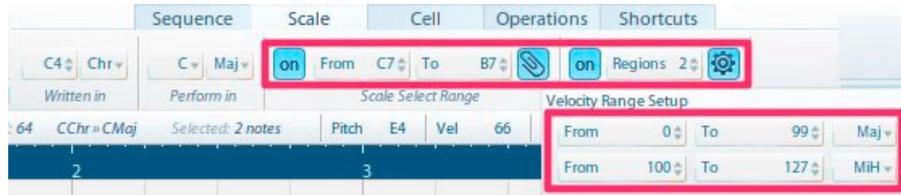
Selection of 12 Scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7 (except Piccolo Flute: C3–B3).

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor harmonic scale

**Attention:** If this Matrix is loaded into an empty preset on its own, the “Scale Select Range” and “Velocity Switch” functions in the APP sequencer (Scale Tab) must be activated.



**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations/Patches are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab). The major part of the patches used is based on Performance Fast Legatos, and Slurred Fast Legatos for most string ensembles.

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches

For Bass to Soprano Instruments (lowest note C2): C1 upwards

For Contrabass Instruments (lowest notes below C2): C6 upwards

The available variations in the Y-Axis consist of upwards and downwards runs and phrases in different lengths.

|                |                   |   |
|----------------|-------------------|---|
| <b>Slot 1</b>  | <b>“Oct up”</b>   | Diatonic run upwards, 1 octave  |
| <b>Slot 2</b>  | <b>“Oct do”</b>   | Diatonic run downwards, 1 octave  |
| <b>Slot 3</b>  | <b>“Oct ac-u”</b> | Diatonic run upwards, 1 octave, with a slight accelerando                     |
| <b>Slot 4</b>  | <b>“Oct ac-d”</b> | Diatonic run downwards, 1 octave, with a slight accelerando                   |
| <b>Slot 5</b>  | <b>“2 Oct up”</b> | Diatonic run upwards, 2 octaves   |
| <b>Slot 6</b>  | <b>“2 Oct do”</b> | Diatonic run downwards, 2 octaves   |
| <b>Slot 7</b>  | <b>“Quint up”</b> | Diatonic run upwards, 1 fifth   |
| <b>Slot 8</b>  | <b>“Quint do”</b> | Diatonic run downwards, 1 fifth   |
| <b>Slot 9</b>  | <b>“Phr A up”</b> | Progressive phrase upwards (step by step) with a repetition note, 1 octave.   |
| <b>Slot 10</b> | <b>“Phr A do”</b> | Progressive phrase downwards (step by step) with a repetition note, 1 octave. |
| <b>Slot 11</b> | <b>“Phr B up”</b> | Progressive “mordent phrase” upwards (step by step), 1 octave.                |
| <b>Slot 12</b> | <b>“Phr B do”</b> | Progressive “mordent phrase” downwards (step by step), 1 octave.              |

## “22 runs+phr whl” – Whole-tone Runs & Phrases

Like Matrix “21 runs+phr key”, but based on whole-tone scales.

## “23 runs+phr chr” – Chromatic Runs & Phrases

Like Matrix “21 runs+phr key”, but based on chromatic scales.

---

**“24 runs+phr key ext”**

Like Matrix “21 runs+phr key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches.

**Attention:** “Ext” Matrices are only available if the Extended Library of the corresponding Collection is available, and only for instruments that contain marcato and/or spiccato Performance Patches.

---

**“25 runs+phr whl ext”**

Like Matrix “21 runs+phr key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches and whole-tone scales.

---

**“26 runs+phr chr ext”**

Like Matrix “21 runs+phr key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches and chromatic scales.

### “31 perf-trills” – Thrilling Trills

Available for all String and Wind Instruments with Performance Trill Patches.

An APP Sequencer based Matrix with Host Tempo Sync NOT activated by default. Trill speed can be set directly in the APP sequencer’s “Sequence” tab.

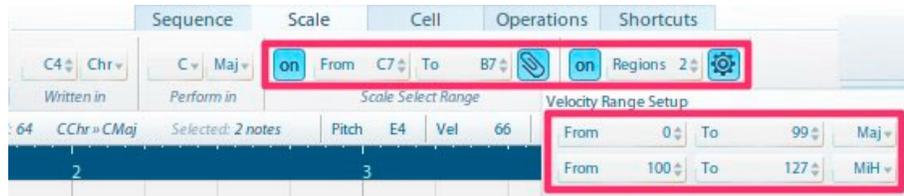
Selection of 12 Scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7 (except Piccolo Flute: C3–B3).

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major Scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor Harmonic Scale

**Attention:** If this Matrix is loaded into an empty preset on its own, the “Scale Select Range” and “Velocity Switch” functions in the APP sequencer (Scale Tab) must be activated.



**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations/Patches are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab). The major part of the Patches used is based on Performance Trill Patches.

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches

For Bass to Soprano Instruments (lowest note C2): C1 upwards

For Contrabass Instruments (lowest notes below C2): C6 upwards

The available variations in the Y-Axis consist of trills in different speeds, accelerating or decelerating, plus a variety of mordents and inverted mordents (“Pralltriller”).

|                |                    |   |
|----------------|--------------------|---|
| <b>Slot 1</b>  | <b>“trill”</b>     | Trill, middle tempo.  |
| <b>Slot 2</b>  | <b>“trill ac”</b>  | Trill, accelerating.  |
| <b>Slot 3</b>  | <b>“trill fa”</b>  | Trill, fast tempo.  |
| <b>Slot 4</b>  | <b>“trill ri”</b>  | Trill, decelerating.  |
| <b>Slot 5</b>  | <b>“mord up1”</b>  | Embellishment, starting with upwards note.                    |
| <b>Slot 6</b>  | <b>“mord do1”</b>  | Embellishment, starting with downwards note.                  |
| <b>Slot 7</b>  | <b>“mord up2”</b>  | Embellishment, starting with two upwards notes.               |
| <b>Slot 8</b>  | <b>“mord up2+”</b> | Embellishment, starting with two upwards notes (variation).   |
| <b>Slot 9</b>  | <b>“mord do2”</b>  | Embellishment, starting with two downwards notes.             |
| <b>Slot 10</b> | <b>“mord do2+”</b> | Embellishment, starting with two downwards notes (variation). |
| <b>Slot 11</b> | <b>“Prall up”</b>  | Inverted mordent (“Pralltriller”) upwards                     |
| <b>Slot 12</b> | <b>“Prall do”</b>  | Inverted mordent (“Pralltriller”) downwards                   |

## “32 arpeggios” – Fantastic Four String Arpeggios

Available for all String Instruments except Double Basses.

APP Sequencer-based Matrix, Host Tempo Sync activated by default.

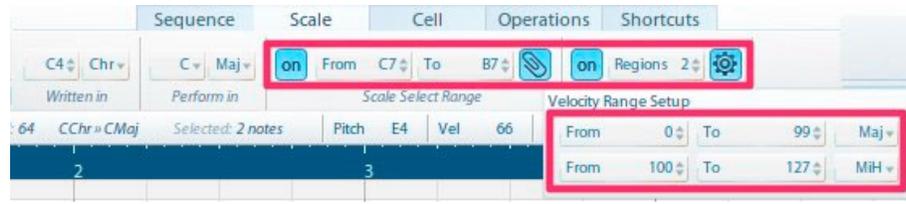
Selection of 12 Scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7.

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor harmonic scale

**Attention:** If this Matrix is loaded into an empty preset on its own, the “Scale Select Range” and “Velocity Switch” in the APP sequencer (Scale Tab) must be activated.



**X-Axis Controller:** Articulations are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab)

The major part of the used patches is based on Performance Legato Patches, in combination with Performance Repetitions.

**Y-Axis Controller:** Keyswitches

Only for Bass to Soprano Instruments (lowest note C2): C1 upwards

The available variations in the Y-Axis are the most essential arpeggio chords over 4 strings within a scale (except #12).

|                |                   |   |
|----------------|-------------------|---|
| <b>Slot 1</b>  | <b>"ma3 root"</b> | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–G–E–C  |
| <b>Slot 2</b>  | <b>"ma3 inv1"</b> | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–A–E–A  |
| <b>Slot 3</b>  | <b>"ma3 inv2"</b> | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–A–F–C  |
| <b>Slot 4</b>  | <b>"ma7 root"</b> | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–G–E–B  |
| <b>Slot 5</b>  | <b>"ma7 inv1"</b> | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–G–E–A  |
| <b>Slot 6</b>  | <b>"ma7 inv2"</b> | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–A–F–E  |
| <b>Slot 7</b>  | <b>"ma7 inv3"</b> | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–A–F–D  |
| <b>Slot 8</b>  | <b>"ma9 1"</b>    | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–G–D–B  |
| <b>Slot 9</b>  | <b>"ma9 2"</b>    | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–G–E–D  |
| <b>Slot 10</b> | <b>"ma9 3"</b>    | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–A–E–D  |
| <b>Slot 11</b> | <b>"Qua–Qui"</b>  | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–F–C–F  |
| <b>Slot 12</b> | <b>"augm chr"</b> | Arpeggio Sequence, as an example in C major: C–G#–E–C |

## Single Instrument Presets

All Vienna Instruments PRO 2 Single Instrument Presets are contained in the already existing Preset folders. They are placed right before the original Vienna Instruments Presets.

All Cells are saved in “disabled” status (without any loaded samples). If you want your Presets to be loaded with their Cells automatically enabled, just activate “Force Enabled ON/OFF” in the Settings menu.



Use Keyswitches to switch between Matrices. Alternatively, you can also use Program Changes or MIDI Control Changes.

### **Matrix switching:** Keyswitches

For Alto and Soprano Instruments (lowest note C3): C2 upwards

For Bass and Tenor Instruments (lowest notes below C3): C6 upwards

For Contrabass Instruments (lowest notes below C2): C5 upwards

Internal reverb is activated!

Tuning Table: 12-tone

Assignment of the most important controllers (pre-configured sliders in Basic View)

|                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Master Volume                 | CC7                                  |
| Velocity X-Fade               | CC2                                  |
| Velocity X-Fade ON/OFF switch | CC28                                 |
| Dyn Range scaler              | CC30                                 |
| Start Offset scaler           | CC21                                 |
| Expression                    | CC11                                 |
| Filter                        | CC24                                 |
| Tuning                        | CC26 (scales Humanize Tuning Curves) |
| Reverb Dry/Wet                | CC14                                 |
| Reverb ON/OFF switch          | CC15                                 |



Common Matrix assignments (if corresponding Patches are available):

|    |                     |
|----|---------------------|
| C  | 01_basic            |
| C# | 11 repetitions      |
| D  | 12 repetition-Dyn   |
| D# | 21 runs+phr key     |
| E  | 22 runs+phr whl     |
| F  | 23 runs+phr chr     |
| F# | 24 runs+phr key ext |
| G  | 25 runs+phr whl ext |
| G# | 26 runs+phr chr ext |
| A  | 31 perf-trills      |
| A# | 32 arpeggios        |

## Chord Matrices

The Matrix Browser displays Chord Matrices in a new folder above the corresponding instrument group's original Single Instruments folder.

The following Chord Matrix folders are available and will be displayed if the respective licenses are available:

### Woodwind MATRIX Files

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| A Woodwinds I   | License: Woodwind I   |
| B Woodwind II   | License: Woodwind II  |
| C Woodwind I+II | Licenses: Woodwind I, Woodwind II                                   |
| D Flutes        | Licenses: Woodwind I, Woodwind II, Woodwind III (Special Woodwinds) |
| E Oboes         | Licenses: Woodwind I, Woodwind II, Woodwind III (Special Woodwinds) |
| F Clarinets     | Licenses: Woodwind I, Woodwind II, Woodwind III (Special Woodwinds) |
| G Saxophones    | Licenses: Saxophones  |



### Brass MATRIX Files

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| A Brass I    | License: Brass I  |
| B Brass I+II | License: Brass I, Brass II  |
| C Trumpets   | Licenses: Brass I, Brass II, Brass III (Special Brass), Dimension Brass, DL Trumpet (B) |
| D Horns      | Licenses: Brass I, Brass II, Dimension Brass  |
| E Trombones  | Licenses: Brass I, Brass II, Dimension Brass  |



All Chord Matrices are based on APP Sequences and consist of chords with 4 or 5 voices with the following voicing:

**Woodwinds I**

1st Voice Flutes  
 2nd Voice Oboes  
 3rd Voice Clarinets  
 4th Voice Bassoons

**Woodwinds II**

1st Voice Flute & Piccolo (in octaves)  
 2nd Voice Clarinet & Oboe  
 3rd Voice Alto Flute & English Horn  
 4th Voice Bass Clarinet  
 5th Voice Contra Bassoon

**Woodwinds I+II**

1st Voice Flute & Piccolo (in octaves)  
 2nd Voice Clarinet & Oboe  
 3rd Voice Bass Clarinet & English Horn  
 4th Voice Bassoon  
 5th Voice Contra Bassoon

**Flutes**

1st Voice Flute 1 & Piccolo (in octaves)  
 2nd Voice Flute 2  
 3rd Voice Alto Flute  
 4th Voice Bass Flute

**Oboes**

1st Voice Oboe  
 2nd Voice Oboe d'amore  
 3rd Voice English Horn  
 4th Voice Heckelphone

**Clarinets**

1st Voice Eb Clarinet  
 2nd Voice Bb Clarinet  
 3rd Voice Clarinets  
 4th Voice Bass Clarinet  
 5th Voice Contra Bass Clarinet

**Saxophones**

1st Voice Soprano Saxophone  
 2nd Voice Alto Saxophone  
 3rd Voice Tenor Saxophone  
 4th Voice Baritone Saxophone  
 5th Voice Bass Saxophone

**Brass I**

1st Voice Trumpets  
 2nd Voice Horns  
 3rd Voice Trombones  
 4th Voice Trombones  
 5th Voice Tuba

**Brass I+II**

1st Voice Trumpets  
 2nd Voice Horns  
 3rd Voice Trombones  
 4th Voice Bass Trombone  
 5th Voice Contrabass Tuba

**Trumpets**

1st Voice 1st Trumpets  
 2nd Voice 2nd Trumpets  
 3rd Voice 3rd Trumpets  
 4th Voice Bass Trumpet

**Horns**

1st Voice 1st Horns  
 2nd Voice 2nd Horns  
 3rd Voice 3rd Horns  
 4th Voice 4th Horns

**Trombones**

1st Voice 1st Trombones  
 2nd Voice 2nd Trombones  
 3rd Voice 3rd Trombones  
 4th Voice Bass Trombone  
 5th Voice Contrabass Trombone

## Chord Matrices

### “01 Chords (8)”

Available for all instrument groups with Chord Matrices.

Play range: C3–B5 (depending on the instrument group and played chord, some limitations in the highest play range will apply)

Selection of 12 scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7.

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor harmonic scale

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Keyswitches to trigger the most important articulations:

- C6 Performance Legato
- C#6 Portamento (Strings) or Sustain Vibrato (Winds)
- D6 Staccato
- D#6 Détaché (Strings) or Portato short (Winds)
- E6 Sustain with vibrato (Strings) or Sustain without vibrato (Winds)
- F6 Fortepiano (Appassionata Strings: Sforzando)
- F#6 Sforzando
- G6 Performance Repetition (Legato)
- G#6 Performance Repetition Portato (Solo Strings: Staccato)
- A6 Performance Repetition Spiccato (Strings) or Staccato (Winds)
- A#6 Tremolo (Strings) or Flutter Tongue (Winds)
- B6 Pizzicato (Strings) or Sforzatissimo (Winds)

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches for a choice of different chord inversions and additional chords like diminished, augmented and ninth chords

With all variations, the soprano voice plays the root note.

- |     |              |  |
|-----|--------------|--|
| C1  | “ma3 root”   | Triad, bass note on the root note                  |
| C#1 | “ma3 inv1”   | Triad, bass note on the third                      |
| D1  | “ma3 inv2”   | Triad, bass note on the fifth                      |
| D#1 | “ma7 root”   | Seventh chord, bass note as root                   |
| E1  | “ma7 inv1”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the third              |
| F1  | “ma7 inv2”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the fifth              |
| F#1 | “ma7 inv3”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the seventh            |
| G1  | “ma9”        | Ninth chord  |
| G#1 | “dim7 chr”   | Diminished Seventh chord (chromatic transposition) |
| A1  | “augm chr”   | Augmented Triad (chromatic transposition)          |
| A#1 | “root + 5th” | Chord without third                                |
| B1  | “5th 3x”     | Chord in steps of fifths                           |

### “02 Chords (3)”

Like Matrix “01 Chords (8)”, soprano voice on the third

### “03 Chords (5)”

Like Matrix “01 Chords (8)”, soprano voice on the fifth

**“04 Chords (7+8)”**

Like Matrix “01 Chords (8)”, soprano voice on the octave or on the seventh (with all Seventh chords)

**“05 Chords (8) Ext”**

Like Matrix “01 Chords (8)”, partly based on alternative articulations in the X-Axis (if Extended Library content is available).

- C6 Performance Trills
- C#6 Performance Marcato
- D6 Performance Spiccato (Strings) or Single Note Staccato (Winds)
- D#6 Détaché long (Strings) or Portato medium (Winds)
- E6 Sustain without vibrato
- F6 Short Crescendos & Diminuendos (ca. 2 seconds), switch with A/B Switch
- F#6 pfp (crescendo – diminuendo)
- G6 Performance Repetition Legato (except Appassionata Strings: pfp long)
- G#6 Performance Repetition Portato (except Appassionata Strings: Performance sfz)
- A6 Performance Repetition Harsh (Strings) or Staccato (Winds)
- A#6 Harmonics (Strings except Appassionata Strings) or Flutter tongue (Winds)
- B6 (Snap) Pizzicato (Strings) or Sforzatissimo (Winds)

**“06 Chords (3) Ext”**

Like Matrix “05 Chords (8) Ext”, soprano voice on the third

**“07 Chords (5) Ext”**

Like Matrix “05 Chords (8) Ext”, soprano voice on the fifth

**“08 Chords (7+8) Ext”**

Like Matrix “05 Chords (8) Ext”, soprano voice on the octave or on the seventh (with all seventh chords)

**“11 Cho-rep (8)”**

Available for all instrument groups with Chord Matrices.

Play range: C3–B5 (depending on the instrument group and played chord, some limitations in the highest play range will apply)

Host Tempo Sync activated by default.

Selection of 12 Scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7.

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor harmonic scale

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations/Patches are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab)

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches for a choice between different chord inversions and additional chords like diminished, augmented and ninth chords

With all variations, the soprano voice plays the root note; all sequences are based on a 16th-note repetition pattern chord.

|     |              |  |
|-----|--------------|--|
| C1  | “ma3 root”   | Triad, bass note on the root note                  |
| C#1 | “ma3 inv1”   | Triad, bass note on the third                      |
| D1  | “ma3 inv2”   | Triad, bass note on the fifth                      |
| D#1 | “ma7 root”   | Seventh chord, bass note as root                   |
| E1  | “ma7 inv1”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the third              |
| F1  | “ma7 inv2”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the fifth              |
| F#1 | “ma7 inv3”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the seventh            |
| G1  | “ma9”        | Ninth chord  |
| G#1 | “dim7 chr”   | Diminished Seventh chord (chromatic transposition) |
| A1  | “augm chr”   | Augmented Triad (chromatic transposition)          |
| A#1 | “root + 5th” | Chord without third                                |
| B1  | “5th 3x”     | Chord in steps of fifths                           |

**“12 Cho-rep (3)”**

Like Matrix “11 Cho-rep (8)”, soprano voice on the third

**“13 Cho-rep (5)”**

Like Matrix “11 Cho-rep (8)”, soprano voice on the fifth

**“14 Cho-rep (7+8)”**

Like Matrix “11 Cho-rep (8)”, soprano voice on the octave or on the seventh (with all seventh chords)

**“15 Cho-repDyn (8)”**

Available for all instrument groups with Chord Matrices.

Play range: C3–B5 (depending on the instrument group and played chord, some limitations in the highest play range will apply)

Host Tempo Sync activated by default.

Selection of 12 Scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7.

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor harmonic scale

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations/Patches are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab)

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches for a choice between different chord inversions and additional chords like diminished, augmented and ninth chords

With all variations, the soprano voice plays the root note; all sequences are based on a 16th-note repetition pattern chord with dynamic changes, and contain eight 16ths from pp–ff and eight 16ths from ff–pp.

|     |              |  |
|-----|--------------|--|
| C1  | “ma3 root”   | Triad, bass note on the root note                  |
| C#1 | “ma3 inv1”   | Triad, bass note on the third                      |
| D1  | “ma3 inv2”   | Triad, bass note on the fifth                      |
| D#1 | “ma7 root”   | Seventh chord, bass note as root                   |
| E1  | “ma7 inv1”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the third              |
| F1  | “ma7 inv2”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the fifth              |
| F#1 | “ma7 inv3”   | Seventh chord, bass note on the seventh            |
| G1  | “ma9”        | Ninth chord  |
| G#1 | “dim7 chr”   | Diminished Seventh chord (chromatic transposition) |
| A1  | “augm chr”   | Augmented Triad (chromatic transposition)          |
| A#1 | “root + 5th” | Chord without third                                |
| B1  | “5th 3x”     | Chord in steps of fifths                           |

**“16 Cho-repDyn (3)”**

Like Matrix “15 Cho-repDyn (8)”, soprano voice on the third

**“17 Cho-repDyn (5)”**

Like Matrix “15 Cho-repDyn (8)”, soprano voice on the fifth

**“18 Cho-repDyn (7+8)”**

Like Matrix “15 Cho-repDyn (8)”, soprano voice on the octave or on the seventh (with all seventh chords)

**“21 Cho-Run key”**

Available for all Instrument Groups with Chord Matrices.

Play range: C3–C5 (depending on the instrument group and played chord, some limitations in the highest play range will apply)

Host Tempo Sync activated by default.

Selection of 12 Scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7.

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor harmonic scale

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations/Patches are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab). The main part of the used Patches is based on Performance Fast Legatos, and Slurred Fast Legatos for most String ensembles.

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches for a choice between different runs upwards and downwards in different lengths and chord combinations. (Switches G#1–B1 are not available for the chord groups of Trumpets, Horns and Trombones due to the limited play range of these instrument groups).

|     |            |  |
|-----|------------|--|
| C1  | “up Octav” | Octave run upwards, chord in unison in octaves   |
| C#1 | “do Octav” | Octave run downwards, chord in unison in octaves   |
| D1  | “up Oc+Qi” | Octave run upwards, chord in fifths and octaves  |
| D#1 | “do Oc+Qi” | Octave run downwards, chord in fifths and octaves  |
| E1  | “up Ch-sh” | Fourth run, crossed voices: upper voices upwards, lower voices downwards                       |
| F1  | “do Ch-sh” | Fourth run, crossed voices: upper voices downwards, lower voices upwards                       |
| F#1 | “up Ch-me” | Octave run, crossed voices: upper voices upwards, lower voices downwards                       |
| G1  | “do Ch-me” | Octave run, crossed voices: upper voices downwards, lower voices upwards                       |
| G#1 | “up Ch-lo” | Run over 2 octaves, crossed voices: upper voices upwards, lower voices upwards and downwards   |
| A1  | “do Ch-lo” | Run over 2 octaves, crossed voices: upper voices downwards, lower voices downwards and upwards |
| A#1 | “up solo”  | Run over 4 octaves in unison, upwards with changing instrumentation                            |
| B1  | “do solo”  | Run over 4 octaves in unison, downwards with changing instrumentation                          |

**“22 Cho-Run whl”**

Like Matrix “21 Cho-Run key”, based on whole-tone scales

**“23 Cho-Run chr”**

Like Matrix “21 Cho-Run key”, based on chromatic scales

**“24 Cho-Run key Ext”**

Like Matrix “21 Cho-Run key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches.

**Attention:** “Ext” Matrices are only available if the corresponding Instrument’s Extended Library is available, and only for instruments that contain marcato and/or spiccato Performance Patches.

**“25 Cho-Run whl Ext”**

Like Matrix “21 Cho-Run key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches and whole-tone scales.

**“26 Cho-Run chr Ext”**

Like Matrix “21 Cho-Run key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches and chromatic scales.

**“31 Cho-Phr key”**

Available for all instrument groups with Chord Matrices.

Play range: C3–C5 (depending on the instrument group and played chord, some limitations in the highest play range will apply)

Host Tempo Sync activated by default.

Selection of 12 Scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7.

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor harmonic scale

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations/Patches are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab). The main part of the Patches used is based on Performance Fast Legatos.

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches for a choice between different phrases, upwards and downwards in different chord combinations.

|     |            |  |
|-----|------------|--|
| C1  | “up Octav” | Incremental octave phrase upwards with repetition note, chord in unison, arranged in octaves           |
| C#1 | “do Octav” | Incremental octave phrase downwards with repetition note, chord in unison, arranged in octaves         |
| D1  | “up Oc+Ch” | Incremental octave phrase upwards with repetition note, arranged in triads                             |
| D#1 | “do Oc+Ch” | Incremental octave phrase downwards with repetition note, arranged in triads                           |
| E1  | “up Phr”   | Phrase upwards, starting with repetition note, chord in unison, arranged in octaves                    |
| F1  | “do Phr”   | Phrase downwards, starting with repetition note, chord in unison, arranged in octaves                  |
| F#1 | “up Octav” | Incremental octave phrase upwards with changed note (cambiata), chord in unison, arranged in octaves   |
| G1  | “do Octav” | Incremental octave phrase downwards with changed note (cambiata), chord in unison, arranged in octaves |
| G#1 | “up Oc+Ch” | Incremental octave phrase upwards with changed note (cambiata), arranged in triads                     |
| A1  | “do Oc+Ch” | Incremental octave phrase downwards with changed note (cambiata), arranged in triads                   |
| A#1 | “up Phr”   | Phrase upwards starting with changed note (cambiata), chord in unison, arranged in octaves             |
| B1  | “do Phr”   | Phrase downwards with changed note (cambiata) downwards, chord in unison, arranged in octaves          |

**“32 Cho-Phr whl”**

Like Matrix “31 Cho-Phr key”, based on whole-tone scales.

**“33 Cho-Phr chr”**

Like Matrix “31 Cho-Phr key”, based on chromatic scales.

**“34 Cho-Phr key Ext”**

Like Matrix “31 Cho-Phr key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches.

**Attention:** “Ext” Matrices are only available if the corresponding Instrument’s Extended Library is available, and only for instruments that contain marcato and/or spiccato Performance Patches.

**“35 Cho-Phr whl Ext”**

Like Matrix “31 Cho-Phr key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches and whole-tone scales.

**“36 Cho-Phr chr Ext”**

Like Matrix “31 Cho-Phr key”, based on fast Marcato Performance Patches and chromatic scales.

**“41 Cho-trem”**

Finger tremolos available for all String and Woodwind groups with Chord Matrices and Performance Trill Patches. (Extended Library Content required!)

An APP Sequencer based Matrix with Host Tempo Sync NOT activated by default. Trill speed can be set directly in the APP sequencer’s “Sequence” tab.

Play range: C3–B5 (depending on the instrument group and played chord, some limitations in the highest play range will apply)

Selection of 12 Scales from C major/minor to B major/minor by Keyswitches C7–B7.

Change between major and minor harmonic scales by Velocity Switch:

Velocity 0–99: Major scale

Velocity 100–127: Minor harmonic scale

**X-Axis Controller (horizontal):** Articulations are assigned in the APP Sequencer (Cell Tab).

**Y-Axis Controller (vertical):** Keyswitches for a choice of different chord inversions and additional chords like diminished, augmented and ninth chords.

## Chord Presets

The Vienna Instruments PRO 2 Chord Presets are located in a folder above the original Single Instruments folder in the Preset Browser of the corresponding instrument group.

All Cells are saved in “disabled” status (without any loaded samples). To load your Presets with all cells automatically enabled, simply activate “Force Enabled ON/OFF” in the Settings menu.

Use Keyswitches to switch between Matrices. Alternatively, you can also use Program Changes or MIDI Control Changes. Internal Reverb is activated!

Tuning Table: 12-tone

Assignment of the most essential controllers (pre-configured sliders in Basic View)

|                               |                                      |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Master Volume                 | CC7                                  |
| Velocity X-Fade               | CC2                                  |
| Velocity X-Fade ON/OFF switch | CC28                                 |
| Dyn Range Scaler              | CC30                                 |
| Start Offset Scaler           | CC21                                 |
| Expression                    | CC11                                 |
| Filter                        | CC24                                 |
| Tuning                        | CC26 (scales Humanize Tuning Curves) |
| Reverb Dry/Wet                | CC14                                 |
| Reverb ON/OFF switch          | CC15                                 |

### Presets “Chords Std Set”

Contains the most important 11 Chord Matrices, based mostly on Standard Library Content.

|     |                  |
|-----|------------------|
| C2  | 01 Chords (8)    |
| C#2 | 02 Chords (3)    |
| D2  | 03 Chords (5)    |
| D#2 | 04 Chords (7+8)  |
| E2  | 11 Cho-rep (8)   |
| F2  | 12 Cho-rep (3)   |
| F#2 | 13 Cho-rep (5)   |
| G2  | 14 Cho-rep (7+8) |
| G#2 | 21 Cho-Run key   |
| A2  | 22 Cho-Run whl   |
| A#2 | 23 Cho-Run chr   |

**Preset “Chords Full Set”**

Contains all available Chord Matrices (except Phrase Matrices), therefore based on Full Library Content.

If you intend to use all matrices via Keyswitches, you will need a second keyboard for playing live!

|      |                     |
|------|---------------------|
| C2   | 01 Chords (8)       |
| C#2  | 02 Chords (3)       |
| D2   | 03 Chords (5)       |
| D#2  | 04 Chords (7+8)     |
| E2   | 11 Cho-rep (8)      |
| F2   | 12 Cho-rep (3)      |
| F#2  | 13 Cho-rep (5)      |
| G2   | 14 Cho-rep (7+8)    |
| G#2  | 21 Cho-Run key      |
| A2   | 22 Cho-Run whl      |
| A#2  | 23 Cho-Run chr      |
|      |                     |
| C ~  | 05 Chords (8) Ext   |
| C# ~ | 06 Chords (3) Ext   |
| D ~  | 07 Chords (5) Ext   |
| D# ~ | 08 Chords (7+8) Ext |
| E ~  | 15 Cho-repDyn (8)   |
| F ~  | 16 Cho-repDyn (3)   |
| F# ~ | 17 Cho-repDyn (5)   |
| G ~  | 18 Cho-repDyn (7+8) |
| G# ~ | 24 Cho-Run key Ext  |
| A ~  | 25 Cho-Run whl Ext  |
| A# ~ | 26 Cho-Run chr Ext  |